



WINDOWS 2000 CONFIGURATION WIZERDS

"Windows 2000 takes forever to configure. This book can save you days of trial and error."

> -Melissa Craft Senior Consulting Engineer, MicroAge Technology Services

Brian M. Collins, MCNE, CNI, MCSE, MCT, CTT Stace Cunningham, CCNA, MCSE, CLSE, COS/2E, CLSI, COS/21, CLSA, MCPS, A+ Martin Weiss, MCSE, MCP+I, CCNA, CNA

TECHNICAL EDITOR: Paul Shields, MCSE FREE Monthly Technology Updates

One-year Vendor Product Upgrade Protection Plan

SYN G

RESS[®]

FREE Membership to Access.Globalknowledge

solutions@syngress.com

With over 1,000,000 copies of our MCSE, MCSD, CompTIA, and Cisco study guides in print, we have come to know many of you personally. By listening, we've learned what you like and dislike about typical computer books. The most requested item has been for a web-based service that keeps you current on the topic of the book and related technologies. In response, we have created <u>solutions@syngress.com</u>, a service that includes the following features:

- A one-year warranty against content obsolescence that occurs as the result of vendor product upgrades. We will provide regular web updates for affected chapters.
- Monthly mailings that respond to customer FAQs and provide detailed explanations of the most difficult topics, written by content experts exclusively for <u>solutions@syngress.com</u>.
- Regularly updated links to sites that our editors have determined offer valuable additional information on key topics.
- Access to "Ask the Author"[™] customer query forms that allow readers to post questions to be addressed by our authors and editors.

Once you've purchased this book, browse to

www.syngress.com/solutions.

To register, you will need to have the book handy to verify your purchase.

Thank you for giving us the opportunity to serve you.

SYNGRESS®



WINDOWS 2000 CONFIGURATION WIZARDS

SYNGRESS[®]

Syngress Media, Inc., the author(s), and any person or firm involved in the writing, editing, or production (collectively "Makers") of this book ("the Work") do not guarantee or warrant the results to be obtained from the Work.

There is no guarantee of any kind, expressed or implied, regarding the Work or its contents. The Work is sold AS IS and WITHOUT WARRANTY. You may have other legal rights, which vary from state to state.

In no event will Makers be liable to you for damages, including any loss of profits, lost savings, or other incidental or consequential damages arising out from the Work or its contents. Because some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of liability for consequential or incidental damages, the above limitation may not apply to you.

You should always use reasonable case, including backup and other appropriate precautions, when working with computers, networks, data, and files.

Syngress Media® and Syngress® are registered trademarks of Syngress Media, Inc. "Career Advancement Through Skill Enhancement[™]" is a trademark of Syngress Media, Inc. Brands and product names mentioned in this book are trademarks or service marks of their respective companies.

KEY SERIAL NUMBER 001 XWPL2C94AS 002 877QZXC555 003 PLTX32AZ12 004 VBM6742DAZ 005 865XXCV214 006 DFW234CXVB 007 MNB3451AWQ 800 678VCXQW21 009 AQW234ZX45 010 78YTXXV234

PUBLISHED BY Syngress Media, Inc. 800 Hingham Street Rockland. MA 02370

Windows 2000 Configuration Wizards

Copyright © 2000 by Syngress Media, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher, with the exception that the program listings may be entered, stored, and executed in a computer system, but they may not be reproduced for publication.

Printed in the United States of America

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0

ISBN: 1-928994-08-3

Copy edit by: Beth Roberts Technical edit by: Paul Shields Index by: Robert Saigh Project Editor: Julie Smalley Proofreading by: Ben Chadwick Page Layout and Art by: Emily Eagar and Vesna Williams Co-Publisher: Richard Kristof

Acknowledgments

We would like to acknowledge the following people for their kindness and support in making this book possible.

Richard Kristof, Duncan Anderson, Jennifer Gould, Robert Woodruff, Kevin Murray, Dale Leatherwood, Shelley Everett, Laurie Hedrick, Rhonda Harmon, Lisa Lavallee, and Robert Sanregret of Global Knowledge, for their generous access to the IT industry's best courses, instructors and training facilities.

Ralph Troupe and the team at Rt. 1 Solutions for their invaluable insight into the challenges of designing, deploying and supporting world-class enterprise networks.

Karen Cross, Kim Wylie, Harry Kirchner, John Hays, Bill Richter, Michael Ruggiero, Kevin Votel, Brittin Clark, Sarah Schaffer, Luke Kreinberg, Ellen Lafferty and Sarah MacLachlan of Publishers Group West for sharing their incredible marketing experience and expertise.

Peter Hoenigsberg, Mary Ging, Caroline Hird, Simon Beale, Julia Oldknow, Kelly Burrows, Jonathan Bunkell, Catherine Anderson, Peet Kruger, Pia Rasmussen, Denelise L'Ecluse, Rosanna Ramacciotti, Marek Lewinson, Marc Appels, Paul Chrystal, Femi Otesanya, and Tracey Alcock of Harcourt International for making certain that our vision remains worldwide in scope.

Special thanks to the professionals at Osborne with whom we are proud to publish the best-selling Global Knowledge Certification Press series.

From Global Knowledge

At Global Knowledge we strive to support the multiplicity of learning styles required by our students to achieve success as technical professionals. As the world's largest IT training company, Global Knowledge is uniquely positioned to offer these books. The expertise gained each year from providing instructor-led training to hundreds of thousands of students worldwide has been captured in book form to enhance your learning experience. We hope that the quality of these books demonstrates our commitment to your lifelong learning success. Whether you choose to learn through the written word, computer based training, Web delivery, or instructor-led training, Global Knowledge is committed to providing you with the very best in each of these categories. For those of you who know Global Knowledge, or those of you who have just found us for the first time, our goal is to be your lifelong competency partner.

Thank your for the opportunity to serve you. We look forward to serving your needs again in the future.

Warmest regards,

Dunien Andream

Duncan Anderson President and Chief Executive Officer, Global Knowledge

Contributors

Brian M. Collins (MCNE, CNI, MCSE, MCT, CTT) is a technical trainer for Network Appliance Inc., a premier provider of Network Attached Storage, as well as a consultant and trainer through his own company, Collins Network Engineering. Brian is an 18-year veteran of technology industries and has worked as a network engineer, trainer, software developer and consultant for government, Fortune 500 companies, and small business. His hobbies include hiking, golf, and operating systems. Brian lives in the redwood forest of Boulder Creek, California, 30 miles from California's Silicon Valley.

Stace Cunningham (CCNA, MCSE, CLSE, COS/2E, CLSI, COS/2I, CLSA, MCPS, A+) is a Systems Engineer with SDC Consulting located in Biloxi, MS. SDC Consulting specializes in the design, engineering, and installation of networks.

Stace has participated as a Technical Contributor for the IIS 3.0 exam, SMS 1.2 exam, Proxy Server 1.0 exam, Exchange Server 5.0 and 5.5 exams, Proxy Server 2.0 exam, IIS 4.0 exam, IEAK exam, and the revised Windows 95 exam. In addition, he has coauthored or technical edited 19 books published by Microsoft Press, Osborne/McGraw-Hill, and Syngress Media.

He was an instrumental force in the design and engineering of a 1700 node Windows NT network that is located in over 20 buildings at Keesler Air Force Base, Mississippi. He also assisted in the design and implementation of a 10,000 node Windows NT network also located at Keesler Air Force Base and received a quality initiative award for his remarkable contribution to the project.

His wife Martha and daughter Marissa are very supportive of the time he spends on the network of computers and routers located in his house. Without their love and support he would not be able to accomplish the goals he has set for himself. Martin Weiss (MCSE, MCP+I, CCNA, CNA, CIBS, A+, Network+, i-Net+) is a Senior Information Management Specialist with ACS Government Solutions Group, which is a recognized leading company in providing broad-based information technology solutions for client organizations. Marty lives in New England and can be contacted via e-mail at castadream@hotmail.com.

Technical Editor

Paul Shields (MCSE) currently works as a network engineer for a major telecommunications company. He has been working with, supporting, and writing about Windows NT for the last five years. His current projects revolve around the design and implementation of enterprise-class servers in a mixed platform environment. He is also working on the roll-out of Windows 2000 to the corporate desktop. Paul can be contacted at pshields@applelinks.com.

Contents

Part I Installing Windows 2000	1
CHAPTER 1 Preinstallation	3
Introduction	4
Before You Begin	4
Upgrading versus New Installation	6
Hardware Requirements	7
Hardware and Software Compatibility	8
Hard Disk Partitioning	10
Choosing a File System	10
Licensing	11
Per Seat Licensing	11
Per Server Licensing	11
Determining Advanced Setup Needs	12
Domain or Workgroup?	12
Choosing Components	12
Networking	13
Final Preparations	16
Summary	16
CHAPTER 2 Windows 2000 Setup Wizard	19
Introduction	20
Before You Begin	20
The Purpose of this Wizard	20
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	20
The Initial Installation Process	21
Windows 2000 Server Setup Wizard	23
Summary	26
PART 2 Configuring Windows 2000	27
CHAPTER 3 Windows 2000 Configure Your Server Wizard	29
Introduction	30
Before You Begin	30
The Purpose of this Wizard	30
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	31
Windows 2000 Configure Your Server Wizard	31
Configure Your Server Program Overview	37
Summary	38

CHAPTER 4 Active Directory Installation Wizard	41
Introduction	42
Before You Begin	42
The Purpose of this Wizard	42
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	43
The Active Directory Installation Wizard	43
Uninstalling Active Directory	54
Summary	58
CHAPTER 5 Network Connection Wizard	61
Introduction	62
Before You Begin	62
The Purpose of this Wizard	62
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	62
The Network Connection Wizard	63
Launching the Network Connection Wizard	63
Dial-Up to a Private Network	64
Dial-Up to the Internet	68
Connect to a Private Network through the Internet	79
Accept Incoming Connections	81
Connect Directly to Another Computer	88
Summary	90
CHAPTER 6 Managing DHCP Servers	93
Introduction	94
Before You Begin	94
The Purpose of this Wizard	94
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	94
Add DHCP Server	95
The Create Scope Wizard	95
The Create Superscope Wizard	105
The Create Multicast Scope Wizard	108
Summary	112
CHAPTER 7 Create A New Zone Wizard (DNS)	113
Introduction	114
Before You Begin	114
The Purpose of this Wizard	114
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	115
The Create A New Zone Wizard	115
Summary	124

CHAPTER 8 Routing and Remote Access	
Configuration Wizard	127
Introduction	128
Before You Begin	128
The Purpose of this Wizard	129
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	129
The Routing and Remote Access Configuration Wizard	129
Configuring Routing and Remote Access	136
Summary	143
CHAPTER 9 Create Shared Folder Wizard	145
Introduction	146
Before You Begin	146
The Purpose of this Wizard	146
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	146
The Create Shared Folder Wizard	147
Summary	153
CHAPTER 10 Add Printer Wizard	155
Introduction	156
Before You Begin	156
The Purpose of this Wizard	156
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	156
The Add Printer Wizard	157
Local Printer	157
Network Printer	162
Summary	167
CHAPTER 11 Internet Information	
Services (IIS) Wizards	169
Introduction	170
Before You Begin	170
The Purpose of this Wizard	170
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	170
The FTP Site Creation Wizard	171
The Web Site Creation Wizard	176
The New SMTP Virtual Server Wizard	182
The Virtual Directory Creation Wizard (Web and FTP)	184
The New Domain Wizard(SMTP Virtual Server)	188
Summary	191

CHAPTER 12 Windows Component Wizard	193
Introduction	194
Before You Begin	194
The Purpose of this Wizard	195
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	196
The Windows Component Wizard	196
Adding a Component	196
Removing a Component	201
Summary	204
CHAPTER 13 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Setup Wizard	207
Introduction	208
Before You Begin	208
The Purpose of this Wizard	208
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	208
The Windows 2000 Resource Kit Setup Wizard	209
Adding Resource Kit Support Tools	209
Removing, Adding, or Reinstalling Resource Kit Support Tools	214
Summary	219
CHAPTER 14 Add/Remove Hardware Wizard Introduction Before You Begin The Purpose of this Wizard Information Needed to Work with this Wizard Add/Remove Hardware Wizard Adding a Plug and Play Device Adding a Non-Plug and Play Device Removing Hardware Summary	221 222 222 222 222 222 222 223 228 239 244
CHAPTER 15 Internet Connection Wizard	245
Introduction	246
Before You Begin	246
The Purpose of this Wizard	246
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	246
The Internet Connection Wizard	247
Optional Advanced Parameters	250
Summary	260
CHAPTER 16 Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard Introduction Before You Begin The Purpose of this Wizard	263 264 264 264

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	264
The Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard	265
Summary	289
CHAPTER 17 Create New Dfs Root Wizard	291
Introduction	292
Before You Begin	292
The Purpose of this Wizard	292
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	293
Create New Dfs Root Wizard	293
Summary	298
CHAPTER 18 Delegation of Control Wizard	299
Introduction	300
Before You Begin	300
The Purpose of this Wizard	300
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	300
The Delegation of Control Wizard	300
Summary	308
CHAPTER 19 Create Partition Wizard	311
Introduction	312
Before You Begin	312
The Purpose of this Wizard	312
Information Needed to Work with this Wizard	312
The Create Partition Wizard	312
Summary	320
CHAPTER 20 System Maintenance Wizards	321
Introduction	322
Before You Begin	322
The Purposes of these Wizards	322
Information Needed to Work with these Wizards	323
The Scheduled Task Wizard	323
The Disk Cleanup Wizard	333
The Scheduled Synchronization Wizard	335
Summary	340
CHAPTER 21 Environment Configuration Wizards	343
Introduction	344
Before You Begin	344
The Purposes of these Wizards	344

Information Needed to Work with these Wizards The Create Shortcut Wizard The Customize This Folders Wizard New Taskpad View Wizard Summary	344 345 348 355 360
CHAPTER 22 Accessibility Wizard Introduction Before You Begin The Purpose of this Wizard Information Needed to Work with this Wizard The Accessibility Wizard Summary	361 362 362 362 362 362 362 383
CHAPTER 23 Send Fax Wizard Introduction Before You Begin The Purpose of this Wizard Information Needed to Work with this Wizard The Send Fax Wizard Summary	385 386 386 386 386 386 386 394
CHAPTER 24 Backup and Recovery Wizards Introduction Before You Begin The Purposes of these Wizards Information Needed to Work with these Wizards Backup Wizard Restore Wizard Emergency Repair Disk Wizard Summary	395 396 396 396 396 396 409 416 417
CHAPTER 25 Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard Introduction Before You Begin The Purpose of this Wizard Information Needed to Work with this Wizard The Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard Summary	419 420 420 420 420 421 427
INDEX	429

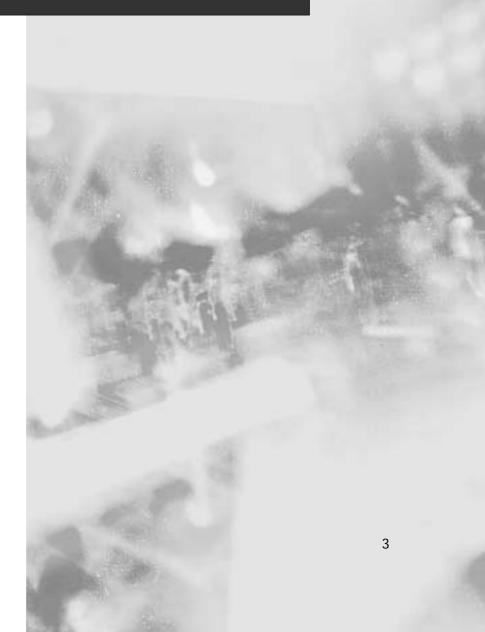
Part I

Installing Windows 2000



Chapter 1

Preinstallation



Introduction

Before beginning the process of upgrading your current Windows NT servers and Workstations to Windows 2000, it is important to take some time and understand the system requirements and upgrade process. Many System Administrators may be surprised to find that the system requirements for Windows 2000 exceed many of their current system configurations.

Another important consideration is the introduction of Active Directories and their impact on network design. Administrators should take time to understand how Active Directories compare to the traditional Domain model. Before upgrading, you will need to decide how you will upgrade to Active Directories and, if necessary, how you will handle the interoperability issues. Since Windows 2000 represents a significant change in the design of Windows networks, System Administrators should plan upgrades carefully. These plans should include testing of upgrades on low-risk systems and ensuring that complete and reliable backups are available in case of a problem.

By the end of this chapter, System Administrators should have a basic understanding of the system requirements for Windows 2000, the fundamental differences from Windows NT, and have a complete backup of systems scheduled to be upgraded.

Before You Begin

It is important that you familiarize yourself with Active Directory before installing Windows 2000. Active Directory is without a doubt the biggest, most important, and most significant change to Windows 2000. One of the reasons Active Directory is capable of scaling so well is because of the *domain tree*. While Windows 2000 still uses the term *domain*, as does Windows NT 4.0 and earlier, the concepts and structures are actually quite different. Active Directory is a set of one or more domain trees. A domain tree is composed of domains that share a common configuration and form a contiguous namespace. Each domain is further subdivided into organizational units (OUs) for administrative purposes. Unlike Windows NT 4.0 and earlier, a Windows 2000 domain can grow to contain over 10 million objects! Figure 1.1 illustrates a domain tree with OUs.

A *forest* is another term that you should also be familiar with. As the name implies, a forest is a set of one or more trees. The primary difference with a forest is that trees within a forest do not form a contiguous namespace. To better illustrate why a forest might exist in your network, imagine two completely separate and well-known companies. Now suppose that they merge, yet because of their client base and name

recognition, they still want to maintain separate identities. Such a situation is ideal for the creation of a forest.

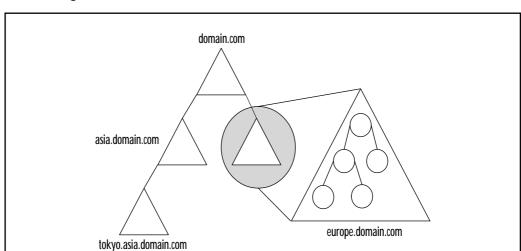


Figure 1.1 A Windows 2000 domain tree contains domains, which in turn contain organizational units.

Because of the vast differences in domain models between Windows NT and Windows 2000, you may be wondering if the two can coexist—the answer is yes. Windows 2000 domains and pre-Windows 2000 domains operate in *mixed mode*. In mixed mode, all down-level servers and clients are unaware that the Primary Domain Controller (PDC) is now an Active Directory Server. When all of the Backup Domain Controllers (BDC) have been upgraded or removed, you can switch over to *native mode* and take advantage of additional Windows 2000 features. Native mode provides for added security group functionality. For example, Windows 2000 operating in native mode has the ability to nest groups. Figure 1.2 illustrates the stages of an upgrade from Windows NT domains to Windows 2000 native domains.

Once you have familiarized yourself with the key features of Windows 2000 and the changes Active Directory brings, you can begin preparing for the actual installation of Windows 2000. The key to a successful upgrade or installation of Windows 2000 is proper preparation. What follows are various factors that must be taken into consideration before running the setup procedures. Additionally, you should review the files located on the root directory of the Windows 2000 CD. These files contain important notes and last-minute information that may be critical to the success of your installation.

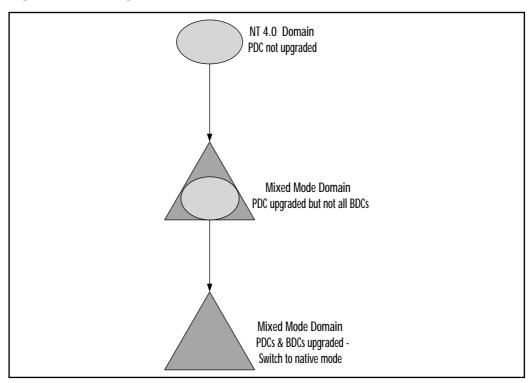


Figure 1.2 Moving domains from Windows NT to Windows 2000.

Upgrading versus New Installation

A decision that needs to be made before running the Windows 2000 Setup is to determine whether to upgrade your existing operating system (see Table 1.1 for supported upgrade paths) or perform a new installation. Generally, a new installation will require many more decisions to be made prior to the procedure, which are discussed later in this chapter. An upgrade, on the other hand, is usually straightforward and requires mostly that certain precautions be met, which are also discussed further on.

Upgrading simply means installing Windows 2000 on a system, in the same partition that already has an operating system that can be upgraded. Alternatively, a new installation will remove the previous operating system, or will install onto a partition without an already existing operating system.

NOTE

Versions of Windows NT earlier than 3.51 cannot be directly upgraded to Windows 2000. You can, however, upgrade these systems to NT version 3.51 or 4.0, and then upgrade to Windows 2000.

Old Versions	Can Be Upgraded To
Windows 95/98	Windows 200 Professional
Windows NT 3.51/4.0 Workstation	Windows 2000 Professional
Windows NT 3.51 Server	Windows 2000 Server Windows 2000 Advanced Server
Windows NT 3.51 Server with Citrix	Cannot be upgraded
Windows NT 4.0 Server	Windows 2000 Server Windows 2000 Advanced Server
Windows NT 4.0 Terminal Server	Windows 2000 Server Windows 2000 Advanced Server
Windows NT 4.0 Enterprise Server	Windows 2000 Advanced Server Windows 2000 Datacenter Server
BackOffice Small Business Server	Cannot be upgraded

Table 1.1 Windows 2000 Upgrade Paths

Hardware Requirements

Before deploying a new operating system, many are initially concerned with the minimum hardware requirements. This is one of the most frequently asked questions, yet it largely depends on the individual circumstances. For example, if your only need is to become acquainted with the user interface of Windows 2000 Server on your computer at home, you can feasibly install the operating system on a Pentium 133 with the minimal amount of RAM. Although this may serve your needs, using this system in a production environment would only serve at best as a space heater.

The hardware requirements for Windows 2000 are rather steep, and it is highly recommended that you take into account your plans for the system. For example, if you plan to use a Windows 2000 Server as domain controller supporting several thousand users, you will likely want to exceed the listed requirements. Generally speaking, however, you should ensure that your system meets the recommended minimum hardware requirements shown in Table 1.2.

Component	Professional	Server
CPU	133 MHz or higher Pentium-compatible processor	133 MHz or higher Pentium- compatible processor
Memory	64MB or more	256MB or more (128MB supported)
Hard disk	2GB with a minimum of 1GB free space on the partition that will contain the system files	2GB with a minimum of 1GB free space on the partition that will contain the system files
CD-only Install	El Torito compatible CD- ROM drive	El Torito compatible CD-ROM drive
Floppy and CD Install	High-density 3.5-inch disk drive and CD-ROM drive	High-density 3.5-inch disk drive and CD-ROM drive
Network Install	Network adapter and access to the network share containing the setup files	Network adapter and access to the network share con- taining the setup files
Accessories	Keyboard and mouse or other pointing device	Keyboard and mouse or other pointing device

Table 1.2 Minimum and Recommended Requirements for Windows 2000

Hardware and Software Compatibility

Before attempting to run Windows 2000 Setup, you should ensure that your hardware is compatible. Although a Hardware Compatibility List (Hcl.txt) is located in the Support directory on the Windows 2000 CD-ROM, it is recommended that your review the most current list, which can viewed at www.microsoft.com/hwtest/hcl (Figure 1.3). Before running setup, it is also probably a good idea to contact the vendors of your hardware devices and obtain the latest drivers. Be sure to pay special attention if you have any mass storage controllers (e.g., SCSI, RAID). A common problem with unsupported controllers is receiving an error after the initial Setup phase, indicating that there is an inaccessible boot device.

Also available from Microsoft's Web site is an easy-to-search directory of applications that are known to work with Windows 2000. To help ensure third-party software reliability and performance with Windows 2000, Microsoft has created the following three classifications for applications:

- Certified. Microsoft provides a Windows 2000 Applications Specification, which specifies uses of advanced Windows Technology. Any Independent Software Vendor (ISV) who uses these advanced specifications is eligible for this level of classification.
- **Ready**. This classification is provided to software that has been tested for compatibility with Windows 2000.
- Planned. This classification is assigned to software in which the vendor is working on a compatible version to meet the Ready or Certified level.

During the installation, Windows 2000 Setup will check your hardware and software, and identify any possible conflicts. Nevertheless, verifying the Hardware Compatibility List and software compatibility before running Setup may save you a lot of time later on. Additionally, verifying this list is critical if you will be purchasing new systems to install Windows 2000 on. You would not want to spend thousands of dollars on new systems only to find out that they cannot run Windows 2000!

Figure 1.3 The HCL list from Microsoft's Web site makes it easy to search for your hardware and contains the latest information.



Hard Disk Partitioning

If you are performing a new installation of Windows 2000, you will need to consider how you will partition your hard disks; an upgrade will not require this because an upgrade will use your already existing partitions. Partitioning allows you to divide your hard disk into one or more isolated sections that can be formatted for a particular file system such as FAT, FAT32, or NTFS.

If you do not already have a partitioning plan, it may be a good idea to seek out further information relative to your specific needs before performing Setup. If you plan to use multiple partitions, it is important that you allow enough room for the data that will be grouped on the individual partitions. For example, the requirements in Table 1.2 indicate that you need at least 1GB of free disk space on the partition that will contain the system files. You should, however, plan for future growth and allow more space than what is needed at the time.

Choosing a File System

Before installing Windows 2000, you should also determine the type of file system you require (e.g., NTFS, FAT, FAT32). If you are familiar with previous versions of Windows NT, you may recall that NTFS is the preferred file system—even more so with Windows 2000. The following is a brief list of the many features that can only be used when installed on an NTFS partition:

Active Directory Domain support File-level security File encryption Sparse files Disk quotas Disk compression Increased scalability

NOTE

If you do not format the partition as NTFS during the installation process, you can easily convert from FAT or FAT32 later by using the Convert command from within Windows. Type **convert** /? at a command prompt for more information.

For the most part, a file system other than NTFS should be considered when you have a need to run a dual-boot computer. Other operating systems cannot gain local access to files located on a Windows 2000 system formatted with NTFS. A FAT partition allows local access through MS-DOS, Windows NT, Windows 2000, and OS/2. A FAT32 partition allows local access only through Windows 98 OSR2, Windows 98, and Windows 2000. Another consideration when determining the file system is possible disk sizes. For example, a FAT partition only supports volumes up to 4GB in size. Although FAT32 supports volumes up to 2TB, Windows 2000 will only allow you to format a FAT32 drive up to 32GB.

NOTE

A Windows NT 4.0 system with Service Pack 4 or higher that resides on a FAT partition can access files locally on an NTFS partition but only with limited access.

Licensing

Licensing plays a critical role in the Windows 2000 Setup process. Determining your needs is critical before running Setup, as you will see shortly. When running a server operating system, each client connection to the server will require some type of license. This Client Access License (CAL) allows connections to the server to access network services, shared folders, and other resources. The Windows 2000 Server licensing options are the same as those in previous versions of the operating systems. From Setup, you will have the option of selecting either Per Seat or Per Server.

Per Seat Licensing

Per Seat licensing requires each connection to have a CAL. Per Seat allows any computer with a CAL to access any number of servers on the network, which is why this is the most common choice for larger companies, or those with more than one server. On the other hand, for smaller organizations or those with only one server, Per Server licensing may be a better option.

Per Server Licensing

Per Server licensing assigns CALs to the individual server instead of the client connections. Therefore, each connection to the server will require the server to have a CAL for each concurrent connection. Assume you operate an organization with 20 employees and you have one server. If you purchase 15 CALs for the server, you can have 15 connections to the server; thus, your server has a fixed number of allowable connections. Of

your 20 employees, if you expect that not of all of them will need to be connected concurrently, purchasing fewer than 20 licenses might be a good idea. Keep in mind, however, that once you have reached your maximum allowable connections, no other connections can be made until one or more connections terminate.

NO<u>TE</u>

If you choose Per Server, you are allowed to change your mind at any time and switch to Per Seat without incurring any additional charges, but only once! You will not be allowed to convert back to Per Server.

Determining Advanced Setup Needs

There are several concepts you will need to be conscious of when determining your setup needs.

Domain or Workgroup?

You will be prompted during installation to select the type of security group your computer will join. The available options are joining a domain, which will require a domain name, a computer account, an available domain controller, and a DNS server; whereas, joining a workgroup only requires a name of a new or existing workgroup. It is common to join a workgroup only in a small network or if you plan to later join a domain. Joining a domain can also be done after Windows 2000 has been set up.

NOTE

If your computer is the first one installed on the network, you will have to first join a workgroup and then create and join the domain after installation.

Choosing Components

In addition to the components installed automatically by Windows 2000 Setup, there are a number of other components that you are given the option to install in order to further extend the functionality of Windows 2000. Keep in mind, however, that if you choose not to install any of these additional components, you can always install them later using the Add/Remove Programs option located in the Control Panel. It might be helpful to determine ahead of time which of these components you may require. Remember that components that are not needed will only take up extra disk space. Table 1.3 provides a list of the available options and a brief description of each.

Networking

Before installing Windows 2000, you may wish to give thought to various issues if you plan on being networked. TCP/IP is the most common protocol in use today. It is the protocol of the Internet, and the protocol used on most servers. In addition, Windows 2000 uses TCP/IP natively and is optimized for this protocol.

TCP/IP uses an IP address as an identifier for a device on the network. Additionally, these addresses are used to route messages over the network. An IP address is a 32-bit numerical address, part of which identifies the network, and the other part identifies the specific node. In addition, if you are connected to the Internet, you must use registered IP addresses, which are assigned by the InterNIC or acquired from your Internet Service Provider (ISP). Table 1.4 explains the three primary classes of IP addresses, and Figure 1.4 illustrates a simple TCP/IP network with a network address of 198.168.0.0.

You have the option to configure TCP/IP during the installation process, or you may elect to configure it after installing Windows. Either way, you will need to think about and address the issues of IP addresses and name resolution. TCP/IP requires that an IP address is assigned to the system, and name resolution allows these IP addresses to be resolved to names that are easier to remember and more user friendly.

Depending upon your existing environment or future plans, there are numerous ways to approach IP addressing. The following list outlines these methods:

- Automatic Private IP Addressing is a feature of Windows 2000 that will automatically assign an IP address for a limited number of systems. For example, if you have five networked systems, and each is given the same subnet mask, each will be assigned an IP address automatically and able to communicate.
- Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol also allows for the automatic assignment of IP addresses. The DHCP server, however, must be assigned a static IP address, and it will then assign IP addresses from a specified pool of available addresses. This is commonly found on networks where there are multiple subnets.
- If you plan to provide access to users from the Internet, you will need to assign a static IP address to the server. You will thus need to obtain a network address from either your ISP or the InterNIC.

Component	Description
Certificate Services	Provides authentication support for smart cards, e-mail, and Web services.
Internet Information Services (IIS)	Provides Web site management support. Also includes NNTP, FTP, and SMTP support.
Management and Monitoring Tools	Provides tools for monitoring and managing the net- work, as well as a Novell Directory Service migration tool.
Message Queuing Services	Provides support services for messaging needed by dis- tributed applications.
Microsoft Indexing Service	Allows users to search document text or properties for documents stored on disk.
Microsoft Script Debugger	Provides support for script development and debug- ging.
COM Internet Services Proxy	Provides support for distributed applications that use Web service to communicate through IIS.
Domain Name System (DNS)	Provides name resolution support.
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	Provides support to dynamically assign client IP addresses.
Internet Authentication Service	Provides dial-in user authentication.
QoS Admission Control Service	Provides support to control application bandwidth use on the network.
Simple TCP/IP Service	Provides support for tools such as Echo, Quote of the Day, and Daytime Discard.
Site Server LDAP Services	Provides support for telephony applications.
Other Network File and Print Services	Provides added support services for Macintosh and UNIX.
Remote Installation Services	Allows for remote setup of client computers.
Terminal Services	Allows clients to run applications from the server.
Terminal Services Licensing	Must be installed with Terminal Services. Allows for the management of licenses for Terminal Server clients.
Windows Media Services	Provides support for delivering streaming multimedia content over a network.

Table 1.3 Components That Can Be Selected from Windows 2000 Setup RoutineComponentDescription

Class	Format	First Octet (8 Bits)	Hosts Supported	Networks Supported
A	Net.Node.Node.Node	1-127	16 million	127
В	Net.Net.Node.Node	128-191	16 thousand	65 thousand
С	Net.Net.Net.Node	192-223	254	2 million

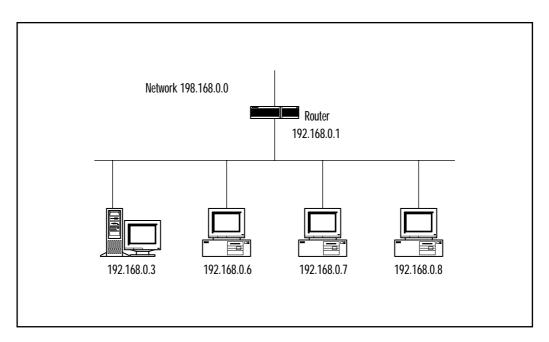
Table 1.4 Properties of IP Address Classes

NOTE

Static IP addresses are required for some types of servers that cannot be assigned dynamic addresses. Examples include Web, mail, DNS, and DHCP servers.

Windows 2000 Server uses the Domain Name System (DNS) to resolve numerical IP addresses to host names. If you elect not to install DNS, it will be automatically installed if your computer becomes a domain controller. In addition to using DNS, you may also need to install Windows

Figure 1.4 A simple network with a Network ID of 198.168.0.0.



Internet Name Service (WINS) to support any clients running earlier versions of Windows.

Final Preparations

After you have planned your installation and are ready to install the new operating system, you should take the time to perform some basic steps that will prepare your system for Setup. Additionally, if you are performing an upgrade, be sure to also review the release notes on the CD-ROM and ensure that you have disabled or removed any applications specified before running Setup. The following tasks should be performed before running Setup to ensure a smooth installation of Windows 2000:

Perform backups. Unless your system does not have any files, you should always perform a backup of your existing files before any major changes. The importance of this simple task cannot be overstated. If for some reason, something goes wrong, you should then have an easy way to restore your previously existing data. Additionally, you may want to use a product such as Norton Ghost to make an exact copy of a critical server onto another system to serve as an additional fallback.

Disable disk mirroring. Before installing Windows 2000, be sure to disable disk mirroring if it is running on the computer. You may then reenable it after the upgrade or new installation is successful. **Disconnect UPS.** Uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) oftentimes create problems during the detection phase. Because Windows will try to detect any devices connected to serial ports, be certain to disconnect the serial cable if you are using a UPS.

TIP

While added reliability and stability are two of the key benefits of Windows 2000, you may want to consider running test installations in a test lab. If you are operating on a large network, this could prove critical to ensure interoperability with other systems.

Summary

Before installing Windows 2000, it is important to consider the changes in the operating system and how they will apply to your organization. One of the biggest and most significant changes in Windows 2000 is the Active Directory directory structure. Because of the vast differences between Windows 2000 and previous versions of the operating system, you will need to consider various factors before installing Windows 2000.

Windows 2000 requires significantly more powerful hardware than Windows NT. If you are planning to run Windows 2000 Server in a production environment, it is recommended that you consider a Pentium II system with at least 128–256MB of memory. Although this chapter provides you with minimum and recommended guidelines, it is critical that you take into account your current and future needs.

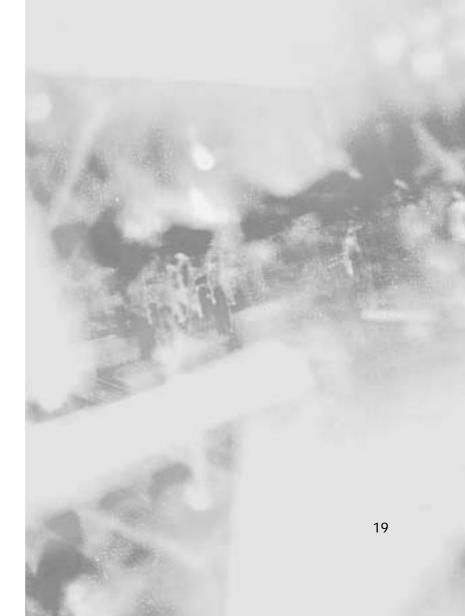
In addition to ensuring you have enough power to run Windows 2000, you will also need to ensure that your hardware and software is compatible with Windows 2000. Microsoft provides an up-to-date and comprehensive database that you can search to ensure that your hardware and software is compatible.

Installing Windows 2000 will require that you make decisions such as which partition to install the operating system on, which file system to use, and which licensing method to use. Additionally, you will need to consider other issues that relate to your needs. For example, will you join a domain or a workgroup? It is also a good idea to determine your server needs, so that you can easily select the components to install that will be required by your organization. Finally, Windows 2000 offers you the option to customize your network configuration during a new installation; therefore, having a firm understanding and knowledge of your existing or proposed network is important.

As a final preparation to installing Windows 2000, you will need to perform some simple, yet important, tasks to ensure a smooth installation. These include performing backups, disabling disk mirroring, and disconnecting any UPS attached to the system. Proper preparation before setting up Windows 2000 will help ensure a smooth and successful installation.

Chapter 2

Windows 2000 Setup Wizard



Introduction

The first step in working with Windows 2000 is the installation process. The process and wizards are similar to those in Windows NT 4.0, but offer a number of new features and options. On most systems, you can boot from the CD-ROM to begin the installation process. The first step is to select a partition and copy over the installation files. The interface used is not a traditional wizard, but does walk you through the process step by step.

The next phase begins after you reboot. Windows 2000 will load and run the initial Setup Wizard. This wizard contains the bulk of the basic Windows 2000 setup process and is very similar for both Server and Professional versions of Windows 2000. By the end of this chapter, you should have a fully functional Windows 2000 system.

Before You Begin

Before you install Windows 2000, ensure that you have considered the various factors discussed in Chapter 1, "Preinstallation." Additionally, ensure that you have backed up your files and disabled disk mirroring and UPS devices before you begin. Although the installation is divided into two phases, there are actually four stages to the Setup routine. These include running the Setup program, running the Setup Wizard, installing Windows networking, and completing the Setup program.

The Purpose of this Wizard

Although the following steps are geared toward the installation of Windows 2000 Server, the installation process for Windows 2000 Professional is nearly identical. The initial installation process and the Server Setup Wizard provide a friendly and step-by-step method to install Windows 2000 on a computer system. Figure 2.1 illustrates the basic steps involved when installing Windows 2000 Server.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

To perform the initial installation process and follow-on wizard, ensure that you have the following:

- Windows 2000 CD-ROM
- Networking information. If you prefer, you may use the default settings and then further customize networking components once Windows is installed.

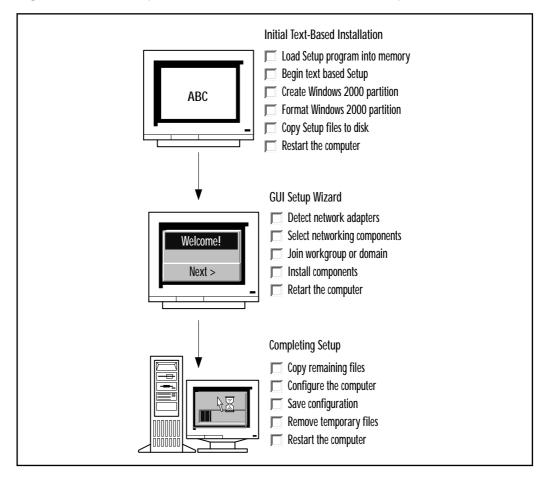


Figure 2.1 These steps are involved for Windows 2000 Setup.

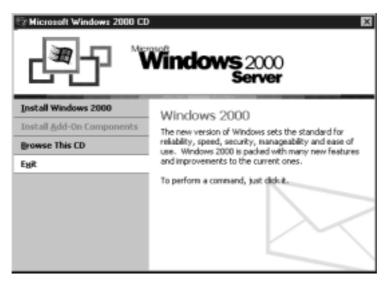
The Initial Installation Process

≻ STEP 1

To initiate the Setup routine, you can use either the Setup boot disks or the CD-ROM, if your computer supports booting from a CD-ROM drive. To start from the CD-ROM, simply insert the CD and turn on or restart your computer. To start from the boot disks, insert Setup Disk 1 into Drive A and turn on or restart your computer.

If you are performing an upgrade, you cannot boot from the CD-ROM. To perform the upgrade on most systems, simply insert the CD-ROM while running your current operation system, and if the auto-run feature is enabled, Setup will display a dialog box to begin the installation (Figure 2.2). Alternatively, you can execute winnt.exe from the I386 directory on the Windows 2000 CD-ROM.

Figure 2.2 The Windows 2000 Server setup dialog box.



NOTE

To make the Setup boot disks, run the makedisk utility from the bootdisk directory on the CD-ROM. Remember that boot disks created from the Windows 2000 Server CD cannot be used with Windows 2000 Professional and vice versa.

≻ STEP 2

After booting from the CD-ROM or boot disk, enough of Windows 2000 is loaded into memory to start the text-based portion of Setup. Read the license agreement that appears. To accept the terms of the license agreement, press F8.

≻ STEP 3

This step allows you to create and delete partitions. You are prompted to select an installation partition. You may select an existing partition, or you can create a new partition by using unpartitioned space.

WARNING

If you are performing a new installation on a partition that contains another operating system, this operating system will be overwritten. Additionally, deleting a partition will also delete any existing data.

≻ STEP 4

Next, you need to select a file system for the partition, which Windows will then format using the specified file system. After formatting the partition, Setup will copy files to the hard disk and then save the configuration information. Setup will then restart the computer and start the Windows 2000 Server Setup Wizard. This wizard is the graphical user interface (GUI) portion of Setup, which will continue with the setup of Windows 2000.

Windows 2000 Server Setup Wizard

➤ STEP 1

The first step in the GUI portion of Setup is to select your regional settings. Here you can set your system up to use multiple languages and regional settings by customizing the language and locale settings.

➤ STEP 2

Next, you will personalize your copy of Windows 2000. Enter the name of the person and the company for which Windows 2000 is licensed for use.

➤ STEP 3

You will then be prompted to choose your licensing mode. If you are upgrading, the mode is already selected based on your existing configuration. As discussed in Chapter 1, you have the option of selecting Per Server or Per Seat licensing. If you select Per Server, you will need to enter the number of Client Access Licenses (CALs) purchased for this server. If at the time of installation you are still unsure which mode to use, be sure to select Per Server, since you are allowed to change from Per Server to Per Seat for free.

≻ STEP 4

Next, enter your computer name. Keep in mind that Windows operating systems earlier than Windows 2000 will only recognize the first 15 characters of the name. You are, however, able to enter a computer name up to 63 characters. Ensure that you enter a unique name.

≻ STEP 5

Windows 2000 creates a user account called Administrator, for which you are prompted to enter a password. The password you enter can contain up to 14 characters. After you have entered your password for the Administrator account, you will need to enter it again to confirm the password.

TIP

Remember to always choose a complex password. It is recommended that you choose a password that consists of numbers, symbols, and uppercase and lowercase letters.

≻ STEP 6

You are able to choose among many components that provide added functionality to Windows 2000. See Table 1.3 in Chapter 1 for a list of available components. In addition to the components discussed earlier, you will also find the Accessories and Utilities component, which provides accessory programs such as Calculator, WordPad, Games, and others.

≻ STEP 7

Next, select your corresponding time zone and adjust the current date and time. Finally, you have the option of specifying if you want Windows 2000 to automatically adjust for daylight savings time by clicking the check box.

≻ STEP 8

Setup will next begin installing the Windows networking components. First it will detect any network cards that may be installed. If it detects a network card, it will configure the card, and then Setup will next try to determine if a DHCP server is running on the network. You will be prompted to select networking components, which can use the typical settings, or you may elect to customize them individually. If you select the typical settings, the following will be installed:

- Client for Microsoft Networks
- File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks
- TCP/IP

You may, depending on your existing network, elect to install other clients, services, and protocols such as NetBEUI, AppleTalk, and so forth. Keep in mind that there is no harm in keeping the typical settings. You may make any changes to your networking configuration after Windows 2000 is installed.

➤ STEP 9

Setup will display the Workgroup or Computer Domain page. Here you specify if you want the computer to join a workgroup or a domain.

NOTE

Choosing to join a domain allows you to only join an *existing* domain. If you wish to create a new domain, you should first join a workgroup. After the installation, you can create a new domain by using the Active Directory Installation Wizard, which is discussed in Chapters 3 and 4.

➤ STEP 10

Windows 2000 will automatically perform the following final installation steps:

- 1. Copy remaining files to the system.
- 2. Apply and save the configuration settings.
- 3. Remove temporary files copied during installation.
- 4. Restart the computer (be sure to remove the Setup floppy disk or CD-ROM).
- 5. Windows 2000 Server will display the Configure Server Wizard after you log on, which allows you to easily perform further configuration of the system.

NOTE

After logging on to the system for the first time, if any additional peripherals are detected, Windows may launch the Found New Hardware Wizard.

Summary

Installing Windows 2000 is comprised of a text-based initial installation and a graphical portion. Together there are four stages: running the Setup program, running the Setup Wizard, installing networking, and completing the Setup program.

To install a fresh copy of Windows 2000, you can use either the supplied startup disks or the CD-ROM, if your system supports booting from the CD-ROM drive. After booting the system from the CD-ROM or setup disk, Windows 2000 is copied into memory and the Setup program starts. Installing Windows is comprised of a series of steps, which include accepting the licensing agreement, selecting a partition, and an appropriate file system. The Setup program then copies necessary files to the hard disk, saves the configuration information, restarts the computer, and then initializes the graphical Windows 2000 Setup Wizard.

After starting the Setup Wizard, Windows 2000 will prompt you to provide various bits of information. You will need to confirm your language and locale, and the name and organization for whom the software is licensed. Next, Windows Setup prompts you to select either a Per Seat or Per Server licensing mode, and then asks you to specify a name for the system and an Administrator account password. After providing the password, you have the opportunity to specify a number of additional components that you wish to install.

After specifying additional components, the installation of Windows 2000 networking begins. Setup will determine and configure any network cards attached to the system, and you are then asked to use typical or customized networking settings. Finally, Windows Setup will configure the networking components you selected after specifying whether Windows will join a domain or a workgroup.

Finally, Setup will copy any remaining files, and then apply and save the configuration settings. After it deletes any temporary files used during the installation process, Setup will restart the computer. Assuming a smooth installation, the Windows 2000 logon prompt will appear. After entering the Administrator password and logging on to Windows 2000 Server, the Configure Your Server window will appear.

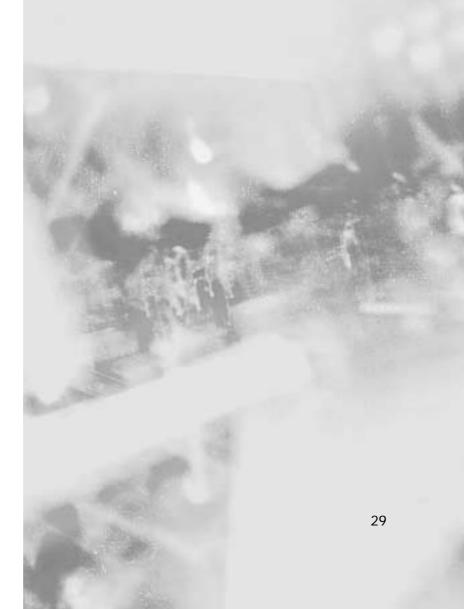
Part II

Configuring Windows 2000



Chapter 3

Windows 2000 Configure Your Server Wizard



Introduction

Once the setup program has configured Windows 2000 for your specific hardware, the next step is configuring the server for the network. The Configure Your Server Wizard walks the Administrator through the process of configuring the machine either as a stand-alone server or as part of a domain.

One of the other things most new installations require is a series of passes through the Add New Hardware Wizard. For those Administrators familiar with Windows 95/98 plug-and-play technology, this wizard will seem familiar. Windows 2000 adds plug-and-play capabilities to the underlying Windows NT kernel. When installed, new hardware will be automatically detected, and the Add New Hardware Wizard will launch. By the end of this chapter, your server will be fully configured and functional on the network.

Before You Begin

Before using the Windows 2000 Configure Your Server Wizard, it is first important to understand the difference between a member server and a stand-alone server. A Windows 2000 member server is part of a domain, but it is not a domain controller. Although a member server does not store a copy of the directory database, as do domain controllers, member servers can still allow users to access resources located on the server. On the other hand, a Windows 2000 stand-alone server is not part of a domain at all; thus, it can only process requests using its own local user database.

Although later in this chapter, the various components of the Configure Your Server utility will be discussed, the process of configuring the server demonstrated applies only to a stand-alone computer that is currently the only server in the network.

To perform the following tasks, ensure that you are logged on as an Administrator.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Configure Your Server Wizard is a great launch point to configure the many components of Windows 2000. This chapter takes you through the steps of configuring the first server on your network, and introduces you to the many options available from Configure Your Server.

The process of configuring the first server in the network is a simple and quick way to set up the core services needed for a Windows 2000 network. This walkthrough will transparently configure Active Directory, Domain Name Service (DNS), and Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) on the system. This process will create a new domain tree, domain, and make the server the first domain controller in the network.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

Before beginning, you should ensure that you have the following:

- Windows 2000 Server CD-ROM
- A name for the new domain
- Public domain name, if applicable

Windows 2000 Configure Your Server Wizard

➤ STEP 1

After completing the Windows 2000 installation and logging on to the system as an Administrator, the Configure Your Server program (Figure 3.1) appears. Choose from the following options, and click **NEXT**:

- This is the only server in my network.
- One or more servers are already running in my network
- I will configure this server later.

The first option is the basis of this walkthrough. If you select the second or third radio button and click Next, the window shown in Figure 3.2 will appear, instructing you to use the menu on the left-hand side to manually configure the server.

➤ STEP 2

Click **Next** to continue configuring your server (Figure 3.3). Windows will install the server as a domain controller, and will also install the following components:

- Active Directory. The Windows 2000 directory service.
- **DHCP**. Provides for the dynamic assignment of IP addresses.
- **DNS**. Provides TCP/IP name resolution.

To learn more about any of these components, click the hyperlinks at the bottom of the screen.

Figure 3.1 After completing the Windows 2000 Setup, you can easily configure your server.



Figure 3.2 Customize your server using the menu on the Configure Your Server program.



Figure 3.3 The Configure Your Server program will install Active Directory, DHCP, and DNS.



≻ STEP 3

If you did not previously configure TCP/IP with an IP address, you will see the screen show in Figure 3.4, indicating that Setup will configure your server with a private static IP address. This is acceptable for a private network; however, once you have an assigned IP network address, you will need to reconfigure your server.

NOTE

A static IP address is an assigned address that is associated with a system, and is not expected to change. Static IP addresses are usually managed by an Administrator, whereas dynamic IP addresses are managed by a DHCP server. When using the Configure Your Server Wizard, the system will use a static IP address because DHCP is also being installed and requires a static IP address, as it cannot dynamically assign itself an IP address. Figure 3.4 Configure Your Server assigns a static Private IP address.



≻ STEP 4

This step configures a domain name for the server.

- Enter the name of the new domain you will be creating followed by the domain name you have registered on the Internet, or you can enter **local** if you do not have a public domain name (Figure 3.5).
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

A preview of the Active Directory domain name will automatically appear as well as the NetBios name for compatibility with non-Windows 2000 systems.

➤ STEP 5

Configure Your Server informs you that the process is ready to begin and may take several minutes (Figure 3.6).

Click **NEXT** to continue.





Figure 3.6 Configure Your Server is ready to begin the actual setup.



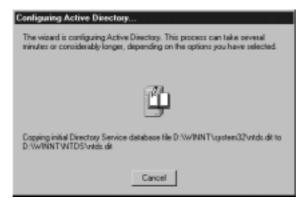
≻ STEP 6

The system will begin to configure additional components, and may prompt you for the original media to be inserted.

 If you are prompted to insert the original media, place the Windows 2000 CD-ROM in the drive, and click NEXT.

The process will begin configuring Active Directory (Figure 3.7). The Active Directory Installation Wizard will then run in unattended mode, and when the process is complete, the computer will automatically restart and be a fully functional server on the network. To configure additional services, continue using the Configure Your Server program.

Figure 3.7 Configuring Active Directory dialog box.



≻ STEP 7

To view the changes made to your system and designate a description for this system, do the following:

- First, open Active Directory Users and Computers from the Administrative Tools menu.
- Notice the domain icon with the name of the new root domain you just created. Beneath that, find the folder called Domain Controllers and view the properties of your server by rightclicking and selecting **Properties**. The Server Properties box shown in Figure 3.8 appears. Notice the full DNS name given to your system. You may optionally enter a description for the system in the **Description** field.

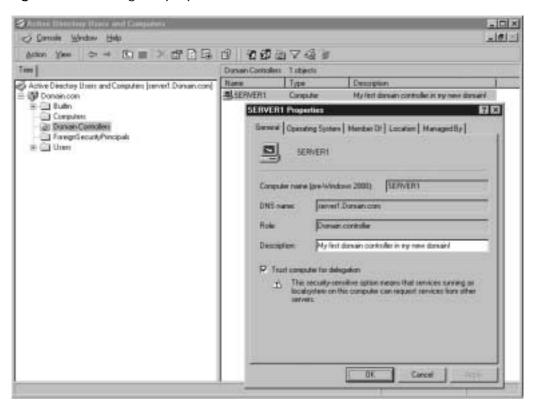


Figure 3.8 Viewing the properties for a domain controller.

Configure Your Server Program Overview

If the Configure Your Server program does not automatically appear when you start your computer, it can be accessed from the Administrative Tools menu. To disable the utility from appearing when the computer starts, de-select the check box next to **Show this screen at startup** located on the **Home** page of the utility (Figure 3.9).

The menu on the left provides an easy method to perform tasks and configure additional components on your server. Table 3.1 outlines the links available on the left-hand side, and presents a brief listing of the elements that can be accessed. Figure 3.9 You can customize your network using Configure Your Server.



Table 3.1 Elements of the Configure Your Server Program

Link	Elements
Register Now	Registration Wizard
Active Directory	User accounts, domains, server roles, permissions, security
File Server	Shared folders and network resources
Web/Media Server	Web sites, multimedia sites, FTP sites
Networking	DNS, DHCP, Routing and Remote Access
Application Server	Component Services, Terminal Services, database server, and e-mail server
Advanced	Message queing, Resource Kit, other optional com- ponents

Summary

After installing Windows 2000 Server, and logging on as an Administrator, the Windows 2000 Configure Your Server program loads. This utility provides a convenient way to configure the many components of Windows 2000.

The initial page provides an option to quickly set up the core services if the server is the only server in the network. Selecting this option will install Active Directory, DHCP, and DNS, which will result in a fully configured and functional server.

To begin the process, you must provide a name for the new domain being created, such as "headquarters." Next, provide a domain name registered on the Internet, such as "Domain.com." If you do not have a registered name, or do not want to be connected with the Internet, you can enter **local**. After providing this information, Windows will begin the process of setting up the core services, and will restart automatically when completed. The Windows 2000 Server will then be configured as a domain controller in the new domain.

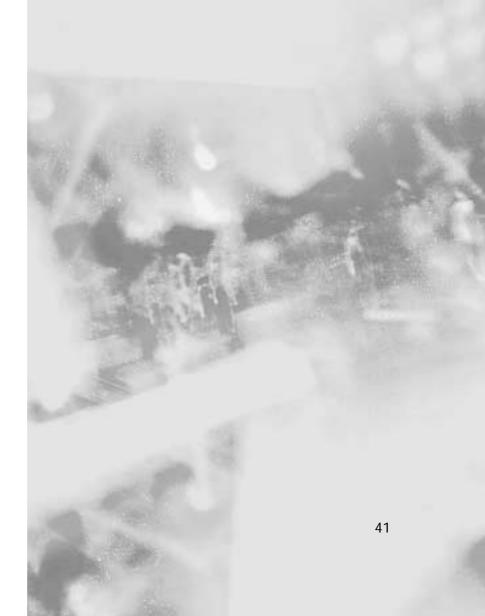
The Configure Your Server program will continue to load on startup until the **Show this screen at startup** check box is cleared. As an Administrator, you may continue to configure additional components from this program by clicking on the appropriate links from the pane on the left side, which include the following:

- Home
- Register Now
- Active Directory
- File Server
- Print Server
- Web/Media Server
- Networking
- Application Server
- Advanced

Additionally, these components can also be configured using the tools located in the Administrative Tools folder. Finally, you may always return to the Configure Your Server program by clicking **Configure Your Server** from the Administrative Tools menu.

Chapter 4

The Active Directory Installation Wizard



Introduction

In Windows 2000, Active Directories replace domains as the method for defining and managing Windows-based machines. Active Directories offer more scalability and better performance compared to their domain predecessors. Configuring Active Directories is one of the more complex tasks associated with Windows 2000 installation. Make sure that you take time to study and understand Active Directories before you begin the configuration process. By the end of this chapter, you will have established the domain controllers for your Active Directory and begun placing servers in the directory.

Before You Begin

Before you begin the Active Directory Installation Wizard, be sure that you are familiar with the concepts of Active Directory. Additionally, you will want to be familiar with the specific terms mentioned during the process, such as:

- Additional domain controller. A peer domain controller installed into an existing domain. Provides redundancy and reduces the load of other domain controllers.
- **Child domain**. A domain located in the namespace tree directly beneath another domain name, which is referred to as the *parent* domain.
- **Domain tree**. The hierarchical tree structure that is used to index domain names.
- **Forest**. A set of one or more trees that do not form a contiguous namespace.

To install Active Directory, you need a partition formatted with the version of NTFS used in Windows 2000. To convert your file system, open a Command Prompt window and enter

```
convert [drive:] /fs:ntfs
```

When the server is rebooted, the file system will be converted to NTFS.

The Purpose of this Wizard

You can easily promote a member server or stand-alone server to a domain controller using the Active Directory Installation Wizard, and demote a domain controller to a member server or stand-alone server.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

To perform any of these functions, ensure that you have the sufficient network credentials needed to create or remove a domain. Specifically, you will need to log on as an Administrator.

Additionally, ensure you have the following information:

- Full DNS name of any existing domains
- Name that will be given to any new domain
- Known location for storing the database and log files
- Known location for storing the SYSVOL folder

NOTE

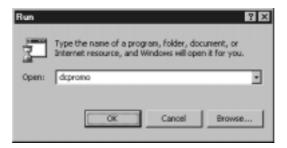
The database and log files are stored by default in the ntds folder of the systemroot; however, it is recommended that these be placed on separate hard disks within the system. The SYSVOL folder uses the SYSVOL folder of the systemroot as its default location. You can, however, locate this folder anywhere in the computer as long as it's on a partition or volume formatted with NTFS.

The Active Directory Installation Wizard

≻ STEP 1

To start the Active Directory Installation Wizard, enter **dcpromo** at the command prompt, or the Run dialog box located in the Start menu (Figure 4.1). You can also click **START** from the Active Directory pane of the Configure Your Server program.

Figure 4.1 Using dcpromo.exe to start the Active Directory Installation Wizard.



➤ STEP 2

The Active Directory Installation Wizard welcome page appears (Figure 4.2). Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 4.2 The Active Directory Installation Wizard welcome page.



≻ STEP 3

Select the type of domain controller to install from the Domain Controller Type page (Figure 4.3). You may choose either of the following options:

- **Domain controller for a new domain**. This option allows you to create a new child domain, new domain tree, or a new forest.
 - Click **NEXT** to continue.
- Additional domain controller for existing domain. Select this option if you have an existing domain and you want this server to become an additional domain controller. This is usually done to improve availability and reliability within the domain.
 - To create an additional domain controller in an existing domain, you will need to provide an authorized username, password, and user domain.
 - Enter the full DNS name for your existing domain that you want to add the additional domain to.
 - Proceed to Step 8.

Figure 4.3 The Domain Controller Type page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard	×
Domain Controller Type Specify the role you want this server to have.	Ŷ
Do you want this server to become a domain controller for a new domain or an additional domain controller for an existing domain?	
C Domain controller for a new domain	
Select this option to create a new child domain, new domain tree, or new forest. This server will become the first domain controller in the new domain.	
C Additional domain controller for an existing domain	
Caution: Proceeding with this option will delete all local accounts on this server.	
<back next=""> C</back>	ancel

≻ STEP 4

By choosing to create a domain controller in a new domain, you can select from one of the following options listed on the Create Tree or Child Domain page (Figure 4.4):

- **Create a new domain tree**. This will create a new domain tree, which can be placed in an existing forest, or you can choose to create a new forest.
 - Click **NEXT** to Continue.
- **Create a new child domain in an existing domain tree**. This option will create a new child domain beneath an existing domain.
 - To create a new child domain in an existing domain tree, you will need to provide an authorized username, password, and user domain.
 - You will need to enter the full DNS name of the existing domain that will be the parent to this domain. For example, if you want to create a new child domain beneath "domain.com," enter "domain.com."
 - Now enter the name of the new child domain, such as "childdomain." The parent name will be added to this name to create the full DNS name, "childdomain.domain.com."
 - Proceed to Step 8.

Figure 4.4 The Create Tree or Child Domain page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard Create Tree or Child Domain You can create a new domain tree or a new child domain.
Do you want to create a new domain tree or a new child domain in an existing domain tree?
Create a new domain tree
If you don't want the new domain to be a child of an existing domain, select this option. This will create a new domain tree that is separate from any existing trees.
You can then choose to place the new domain tree in an existing forest, or create a new forest.
C Create a new child domain in an existing domain tree
If you want the new domain to be a child of an existing domain, select this option. For example, you could create a new domain named headquarters nycompany.com as a child domain of the domain nycompany.com.
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 5

When creating a new domain tree, you can select from one of the following options listed on the Create or Join Forest page (Figure 4.5):

- **Create a new forest of domain trees**. If this is your first domain, you must select this option. If you want to create a new domain tree that is independent of your current forest, you would also select this option.
 - Click **NEXT** to continue.
- Place this new domain tree in an existing forest. Select this option to create a new domain tree that will be part of an existing forest. This allows access to resources within the other trees.
 - To place this new domain tree in an existing forest, you will need to provide an authorized username, password, and user domain.
 - Enter the full DNS name of the forest root domain; for example, "rootdomain.domain.com."
 - Enter the full DNS name of the new tree; for example, "newtree.domain.com."
 - Proceed to Step 8.

Figure 4.5 The Create or Join Forest page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard	×
Create or Join Ferent Specify the location of the new domain.	Ì
Do you want to create a new forest or join an existing forest?	
Create a new forest of domain trees	
Select this option if this is the first domain in your organization, or if you want the new domain tree you are creating to be completely independent of your ourrent forest.	
Place this new domain tree in an existing forest	
Select this option if you want the users in the new domain tree to have access to resources in existing domain trees, and vice versa.	
<back next=""> Care</back>	oel

≻ STEP 6

If you chose to create a new forest, enter the full DNS name for the new domain in the New Domain Name page, and click **NEXT** to continue (Figure 4.6).

Figure 4.6 The New Domain Name page.



≻ STEP 7

The next step is to configure a NetBIOS name for compatibility with older versions of Windows. A default name will automatically appear in the **Domain NetBIOS name** field of the NetBIOS Domain Name page (Figure 4.7). Click **Next** to continue, or you may specify a different name.

Figure 4.7 The NetBIOS Domain Name page.

Active	Directory Installation Wiz	ard	×
Ne	t BIDS Domain Name Specity a NetBIDS name for t	ie new domain.	$\widehat{\mathbf{A}}$
		sarlier versions of Windows will use to i te name shown, or type a new name.	dentify the new
	Domain NetBIOS name:	DOMAIN	
		< Back Nex	t> Cancel

≻ STEP 8

At the Database and Log Locations page, click **NEXT** to select the default locations of the database and log files, or enter a location, or click **BROWSE** to identify a new location (Figure 4.8).

The database is the directory for the domain, and the log file is used to temporarily store changes that are made to the database. It is recommended that you place these on separate hard disks for increased performance.

➤ STEP 9

Click **NEXT** on the Shared System Volume page to accept the default locations of the SYSVOL folder, or enter a location, or click **BROWSE** to identify a new location (Figure 4.9).

The shared system volume stores scripts and Group Policy objects. This folder is used by file replication to replicate information among various domain controllers. Figure 4.8 The Database and Log Locations page.

ve Directory Installation Wizard	2
Patabase and Log Locations Specify the locations of the Active Directory database and log.	X
For best performance and recoverability, store the database and the hard disks.	log on separate
Where do you want to store the Active Directory database?	
Database location:	
D:\wINNT\NTDS	Browse
Where do you want to store the Active Directory log?	
Log location	
Log location: D-WINNTYNTDS	Browne
Log location: D:/WINNTWTDS	Browse
	Browse
	Browse

Figure 4.9 The Shared System Volume page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard
Shared System Volume Specity the folder to be shared as the system volume.
The Sysvol folder stores the server's copy of the domain's public files. The contents of the Sysvol folder are replicated to all domain controllers in the domain.
The Sysvol lolder must be located on an NTFS 5.0 volume.
Enter a location for the Sysvol folder.
Folder location
D:\WINNT\SYSVOL Browse
< Back Next> Cancel

➤ STEP 10

If DNS is not already available on the network, you can choose to have the Active Directory Installation Wizard install and configure DNS on the computer (Figure 4.10). Then, click **NEXT**.

NOTE

Although it is recommended that you use Microsoft's DNS to take advantage of added features, you may use another DNS system. Windows 2000 DNS is specifically designed to take full advantage of Active Directory. It uses multimaster replication, while non-Microsoft DNS servers use a single-master replication. Additionally, Microsoft's implementation of DNS complies completely with Internet standards; thus, it is compatible with any other operating system.

Figure 4.10 The Configure DNS page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard
Configure DNS The wizard can configure DNS for your new domain.
DNS is not available. Would you like this wizard to install and configure a DNS server for your new domain?
Yes, install and configure DNS on this computer (recommended)
No, I will install and configure DNS myself
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 11

From the Permissions page (Figure 4.11), select one of the following default permissions for user and group objects, and click **NEXT**:

• **Permissions compatible with pre-Windows 2000 servers**. If you run server programs such a Remote Access on pre-Windows 2000 systems, you may want to select this option.

• **Permissions compatible only with Windows 2000 servers**. Select this option if you do not have any pre-Windows 2000 systems, or if you only run server programs on Windows 2000 servers.

Figure 4.11 The Permissions page.

Active Di	rectory Installation Wizard
Permi: Se	ect default permissions for user and group objects.
	me server programs, such as Windows NT Remote Access Service, read information red on domain controllers.
G	Permissions compatible with pre-Windows 2000 servers
	Select this option if you run server programs on pre-Windows 2000 servers or on Windows 2000 servers that are members of pre-Windows 2000 domains.
c	Permissions compatible only with Windows 2000 servers
	Select this option it you run server programs only on Windows 2000 servers that are members of Windows 2000 domains. Only authenticated users can read information on this domain.
	< Back Next > Cancel

≻ STEP 12

Enter and confirm a password, and click **NEXT**. This password will allow access to the Directory Services Restore Mode (Figure 4.12). The Directory Services Restore Mode allows for the restoration and maintenance of Active Directory and the SYSVOL folder.

➤ STEP 13

Click **Next** from the Summary page to begin installing Active Directory (Figure 4.13). This page identifies the options you have selected. If you need to make changes, click **BACK**.

➤ STEP 14

After confirming the options, the system will begin to configure Active Directory (Figure 4.14).

Figure 4.12 The Directory Services Restore Mode Administrator Password page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard	×
Directory Services Restore Mode Administrator Password Specify an Administrator password to use when starting the computer in Directory Services Restore Mode.	$\widehat{\boldsymbol{\mathscr{A}}}$
Type and confirm the password you want to assign to this server's Administrator account, to be used when the computer is statted in Directory Services Restore Mo	de.
Password	
Confirm password:	
< Back Next>	Cancel

Figure 4.13 The Active Directory Installation Wizard Summary page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard	×
Summary Review and confirm the options you selected.	$\widehat{\mathbf{A}}$
You chose to:	
Configure this server as the first domain controller in a new forest of domain trees.	-
The new domain name is "domain.com". This is also the name of the new forest.	
The NetBIOS name of the domain is "DOMAIN"	
Database location: D: WVINNTWITDS Log file location: D: WVINNTWITDS Sysvol folder location: D: WVINNT\SYSVOL	
The DNS service will be installed and configured on this computer.	
Permissions compatible with pre-Windows 2000 servers will be used with this	-
To change an option, click Back. To continue, click Next.	
<back next=""></back>	Cancel

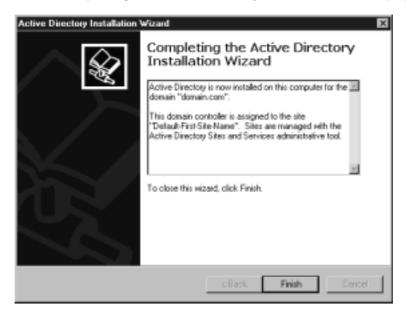
Figure 4.14 Configuring Active Directory dialog box.



➤ STEP 15

The Active Directory Installation Wizard completion page appears (Figure 4.15). Click **FINISH** to close the wizard.

Figure 4.15 The Completing the Active Directory Installation Wizard page.



Uninstalling Active Directory

Uninstalling Active Directory will demote the domain controller to either a stand-alone or member server. This process removes the system from any forest and from DNS. By demoting a server, you remove Active Directory and all security principals, which are replaced by the default security database installed during a new installation. If you are demoting a domain controller, and it is not the last domain controller in the domain, it will perform a final replication among the other domain controllers.

TIP

If an attempt to demote a domain controller is unsuccessful, you will need to manually remove the metadata from the directory by using the Ntdsutil.exe utility. For further information on using the Ntdsutil.exe utility to remove Active Directory, see article number Q216498 in the online Microsoft Knowledge Base.

≻ STEP 1

To uninstall Active Directory, start the Active Directory Installation Wizard as shown earlier in Figure 4.1.

➤ STEP 2

The Active Directory Installation Wizard (Figure 4.16) will tell you that the computer is already an Active Directory domain controller, and proceeding will remove Active Directory. Click **NEXT** to continue.

➤ STEP 3

From the Remove Active Directory page (Figure 4.17), specify whether this is the last domain controller in the domain, and click **NEXT**.

Place a check mark next to **This server is the last domain con-troller in the domain** if there are no more domain controllers in the domain and you want to convert this server to a stand-alone server.

Leave the check box empty if this is not the last domain controller in the domain and you wish to remove Active Directory from this computer. Doing so will demote the server to a member server.

➤ STEP 4

To remove Active Directory, you need to enter the account details of an account with Enterprise Administrator privileges to the forest (Figure 4.18), and click **Next**. **Figure 4.16** The Welcome to the Active Directory Installation page for a computer with Active Directory already installed.



Figure 4.17 The Remove Active Directory page.

Benov	Extern Installation Wizard External Active Directory cate whether this is the last domain controller in the domain.
	oving Active Directory converts this domain controller to a member server. Or, if this a last domain controller in the domain, it will become a standalone server.
R	This server is the last domain controller in the domain
A	After you remove Active Directory from the last domain controller in the domain, the domain no longer exists, which means that:
	 Computers that belong to this domain cannot log onto the domain or access any domain services.
	 All user accounts in this domain will be deleted.
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

Figure 4.18 The Network Credentials page.

Active Directory Installation Wizard Network Credentials Provide a network user name and password.				
Specify an accou	nt with Enterprise Administrator privileges to the forest, "domain.com".			
User name:	administrator			
Password: Domain:	domain.com			
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>			

≻ STEP 5

Enter and confirm an Administrator's password, which will be used once the server has been demoted (Figure 4.19).

Figure 4.19 The Administrator Password page.

Active Directory Installa	ion Wizard	×
Administrator Passwe Specily an Administ		S.
Type the password t	obe assigned to the serverAdministr	tator account.
Password		_
Confirm password	EXTERNAL CONTRACTOR OF CONTRAC	_
	< Back	Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 6

Review and confirm the details by clicking **NEXT** on the Summary page (Figure 4.20).

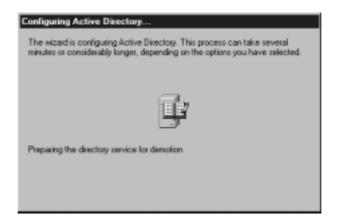
Figure 4.20 The Summary page for removing Active Directory.

Active Directory Installation Wizard	×
Summary Review and confirm the options you selected.	Ŷ
You chose to:	
Remove Active Directory from this computer.	-
You have indicated that this domain controller is the last controller in the domain "domain.com"	
When the process is complete, this domain will no longer exist.	
	2
To change an option, click Back. To continue, click Next.	
< Back Next>	Cancel

≻ STEP 7

The Active Directory Installation Wizard will begin the demotion process of removing Active Directory and returning the system to a member or stand-alone server status (Figure 4.21).

Figure 4.21 Configuring Active Directory for removal dialog box.



≻ STEP 8

Click **FINISH** from the Completing the Active Directory Installation Wizard page to close the wizard (Figure 4.22). You must restart your computer for the changes to take effect.

Figure 4.22 Completing the Active Directory Installation removal page.



Summary

The Active Directory Installation Wizard can be used to install Active Directory (promotion) or remove Active Directory (demotion). The command-line utility used to start the wizard is dcpromo.exe; it will add or remove Active Directory depending on whether it is already installed.

After starting the wizard on a member or stand-alone server, you can create a domain controller for a new domain, or create an additional domain controller for an existing domain. Selecting to create an additional domain controller will require that you have proper credentials and that you provide the full DNS name of the domain you are adding the new domain to.

Some points to keep in mind about Active Directory promotion include:

 By creating a new domain controller for a new domain, a decision needs to be made on whether to create a new domain tree or create a new child domain beneath an existing domain.

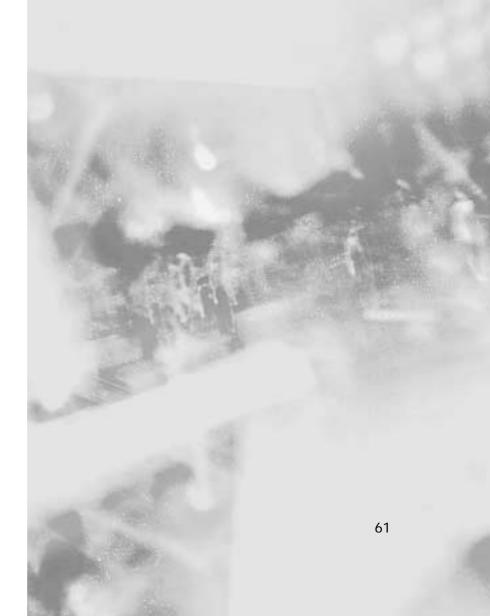
- Choosing to create a new child domain will require the Administrator password, and the full DNS name for the parent will need to be entered. Finally, a name must be provided for the new child domain.
- Choosing to create a new domain tree will allow either the creation of a new forest of domain trees, or allow the new domain to be placed in an existing forest.
- If the new domain is placed in an existing forest, you will need to provide the proper credentials and enter the full DNS name of the forest root domain. Finally, the full DNS name of the new tree must be entered.
- Choosing to create a new forest will require the full DNS name for the new domain.

Regardless of the method selected, you will need to provide a location to store the database and log files, and the shared system volume that will be created. By default, the database and log files are placed in the %systemroot%\winnt\ntds folder, and the system volume is placed in the %systemroot%\winnt\syvol folder.

Use the Active Directory Installation Wizard to remove Active Directory from a domain controller. If you demote a server, and there are other domain controllers on the network, the server will become a member server in the domain; whereas, if you remove Active Directory from the last domain controller in the domain, the server will become a stand-alone server.

Chapter 5

Network Connection Wizard



Introduction

Windows 2000 offers support for one or more network connections. These can be either LAN connections or dial-in connections. During the installation process, a single LAN connection was configured if a network interface card (NIC) was detected. As you add new NICs or want to dial out to other networks, you will need to add new network connections.

You can also configure a Windows 2000 server to accept incoming connections. These connections can be through either dial-up modems or a Virtual Private Network (VPN) across the Internet. By the end of this chapter, you will be familiar with the Network Connection Wizard.

Before You Begin

To perform most of the following task, you will need to have an Administrator account.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Network Connection Wizard allows you to configure outbound connections and host incoming connections from a single location.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

A variety of tasks can be performed from the Network Connection Wizard. What you need will depend on the specific task you choose. Some things to remember include the following:

- Connecting to a private network
 - Telephone number
- Connecting to an Internet Service Provider (ISP)
 - Phone number
 - User account name and password
 - DNS address
- Establish an Internet mail account
 - Display name
 - E-mail address
 - Mail server type
 - Incoming and outgoing mail server name
 - User account name and password
 - Connecting to a VPN
 - Host name or IP address.

The Network Connection Wizard

Launching the Network Connection Wizard

≻ STEP 1

To start the Network Connection Wizard, right-click **My Network Places**, click **Properties**, and then double-click the **Make New Connection** icon. The Network Connection Wizard page will appear (Figure 5.1). Click **NEXT.**

Figure 5.1 The Network Connection Wizard.



≻ STEP 2

Next, you will see the Network Connection Type page (Figure 5.2). Several options are available, depending on the specific networking needs. From this page, you can configure outbound and incoming connections. By using the wizard, all protocols and services that are needed are automatically configured.

Dial-Up to a Private Network

The "Dial-up to private network" option allows you to connect from your telephone line to a computer or network such as an ISP to establish an Internet connection, or to a modem, which connects you to a private network. This is most commonly referred to as a Remote Access Service (RAS) client.

≻ STEP 1

From the **Network Connection Type** page (Figure 5.2), ensure that **Dial-up to private network** is selected, and click **NEXT**.

Figure 5.2 Network Connection Type page.

Network Connection Wizard
Network Connection Type You can choose the type of network connection you want to create, based on your network configuration and your networking needs.
Dial-up to private network Connect using my phone line (modern or ISDN).
C Dial-up to the Internet Connect to the Internet using my phone line (modem or ISDN).
Connect to a private network through the Internet Create a Virtual Private Network (VPN) connection or 'turnet' through the Internet.
C Accept incoming connections Let other computers connect to nine by phone line, the Internet, or direct cable.
Connect directly to another computer Connect using my serial, parallel, or infrared port.
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 2

- Enter the telephone number of the computer or network that you wish to connect to (Figure 5.3).
- Select the **Use dialing rules** check box if you wish to use dialing rules, which can be configured using the Phone and Modem Options in Control Panel.
- Click Next.

Figure 5.3 Phone Number to Dial page.

Network Connection Wizard
Phone Number to Dial You must specify the phone number of the computer or network you want to connect to.
Type the phone number of the computer or network you are connecting to. If you want your computer to determine automatically how to dial from different locations, check Use dialing rules.
Area code: Phone number 987-6543
Country/hegion pode:
Use dialing rules
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 3

Specify who can use this connection—only you, or all other users (Figure 5.4).

- Ensure For all users is selected if you want this connection made available to other users of this computer and/or other systems.
- Select **Only for myself** if you want this connection to be used only by the user currently logged on.
- Click Next.
- If you selected **For all users**, proceed to the next step; otherwise, go to Step 5.
- ➤ STEP 4

By choosing to make your connection available to others, you are also given the option to allow other computers access to the dial-up connection (Figure 5.5).

 To allow other computers on your local network access through this dial-up connection, select the Enable Internet Connection Sharing for this connection box.

- Additionally, you can check Enable on-demand dialing, which will cause the computer to automatically dial the connection when another computer tries to gain access to external resources. For example, if a user from another system attempts to load an external Web page, a connection will automatically be dialed from the sharing computer. To allow on-demand dialing, you must first enable Internet Connection Sharing.
- Click Next.

Figure 5.4 Connection Availability page.

Network Connection Wizard
Connection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself.
You may make this connection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged on.
Create this connection:
For all users
C Drily for myself
< Back Next> Cancel

➤ STEP 5

- Finally, enter a name for this connection (Figure 5.6). This will conclude the wizard and save the connection in the Network and Dial-up Connections folder.
- You can optionally create a shortcut for this connection on your desktop by selecting the Add a shortcut to my desktop box. Click FINISH to close the wizard.

TIP

To connect using X.25, right-click the connection you just made and select **Properties**. Next, select **X.25** from the Option tab to configure the X.25 connection.

Figure 5.5 Internet Connection Sharing page.

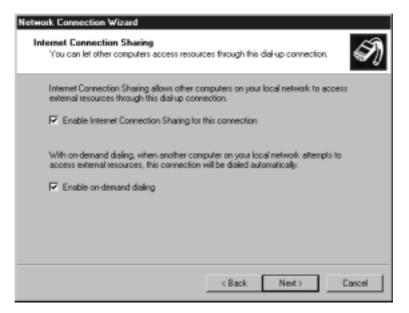


Figure 5.6 Completing the Network Connection Wizard.



Dial-Up to the Internet

≻ STEP 1

From the **Network Connection Type** page (Figure 5.2), ensure that **Dial-up to the Internet** is selected, and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 2

The Internet Connection Wizard will launch (Figure 5.7). Alternatively, you can launch the Internet Connection Wizard by clicking **Setup** from the Connections tab under Internet Options in the Tools menu of Internet Explorer.

Select one of the following three options:

- Sign up for a new Internet account
- Transfer an existing Internet account
- Manually set up Internet Connection

Additionally, if you wish to view a brief tutorial about the Internet, click **TUTORIAL**, and a separate page will launch displaying a brief introduction to the Internet.

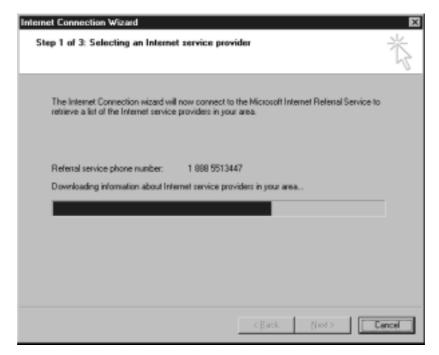
Figure 5.7 Welcome to the Internet Connection Wizard page.

Internet Connection Wizard	×
	Welcome to the Internet Connection Wizard The Internet Connection wizard helps you connect your computer to the Internet. You can use this wizard to set up a new or existing Internet account. (My telephone line is connected to my modem.) I want to transfer my existing Internet account to this computer. [My telephone line is connected to my modem.] I want to set up my Internet connection manually, or I want to connect through a local area network (UAN). To leave your Internet settings unchanged, click Cancel. To leave nore about the Internet, click Tutorial
	< Back Next> Cancel

➤ STEP 3

Of the available three options, the first two options will cause the Wizard to dial a referral service telephone number (Figure 5.8), which will then attempt to retrieve a list of available ISPs in your area.

Figure 5.8 Selecting an Internet service provider page.



If you select the second option to transfer your existing account, you will be given a list of available providers in your area that support automatic configuration of Internet settings (Figure 5.9). If your existing provider is not listed, select **My Internet service provider is not listed**, and click **NEXT** to manually set up your Internet connection.

➤ STEP 4

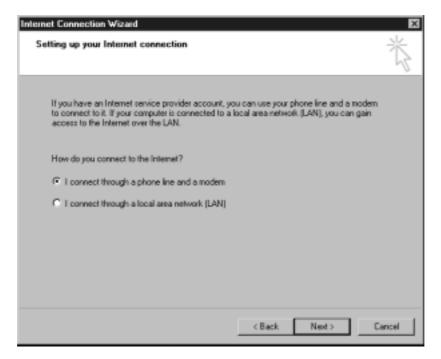
If the automatic configuration feature is not supported by your ISP, or if you choose to manually configure your Internet connection, you need to specify how you want to connect to the Internet (Figure 5.10). Available options include:

- Connecting to an Internet provider via a telephone line and a modem
- Connecting through a local area network (LAN).

Figure 5.9 Selecting your Internet service provider page.

Internet Connection Wizard Step 1 of 3: Selecting your Internet service provider	×
Dlick your ISP, and then click Next. Internet service providers:	
Spynet Mindspring Concentric Network Netcom Mindspring Prodigy Internet AT&T WorkNet Service MindSpring My Internet service provider is not listed	
< Back News >	Cancel

Figure 5.10 Setting up your Internet connection.



Select a connection preference, and click NEXT.

➤ STEP 5

- If you choose to connect through a telephone line and a modem, enter your ISP's telephone number (Figure 5.11).
- If you choose to connect through a LAN, then proceed to Step 8.
- Click **ADVANCED** only if your ISP requires that you manually input the connection type (Figure 5.12) and address (Figure 5.13).
- Click Next.

NOTE

The majority of ISPs dynamically issue client IP addresses upon connection to the service; however, if an IP address needs to be entered, select **Always use the following**, and enter the IP address assigned to you. If your ISP does not automatically provide a DNS address, you can manually specify a primary and secondary DNS by selecting **Always use the following**, and then enter the DNS addresses assigned to you by your ISP.

Figure 5.11 Internet account connection information page.

ep 1 of 3: Internet account connection information		7
Type the phone number you dial to connect to your ISP.		
Area code: Telephone number: 060 = 1234567		
Country/region name and code: United States of America (1)		
Use area code and dialing rules		
To configure connection properties, click Advanced. (Most ISPo do not require advanced settings.)	Advanced	
< 84	ack Next>	Cano

Figure 5.12 Connection tab of the Advanced Connection Properties.

Advanced Connection Properties
Connection Addresses
Connection type
PPP (Paint to Paint Protocol)
Disable LCP Extensions
C SUP (Serial Line Internet Protocol)
C C-SLIP (Compressed Serial Line Internet Photocol)
Logan procedure
@ None
C Log on manually
C Use logon script:
Script. Browse
OK Cancel

Figure 5.13 Addresses tab of the Advanced Connection Properties.

	perties
onnection Addresses	
IP address	
Internet service provi	ider automatically provides one
C Always use the follow	áng:
IP Address:	
DNS server address	
Drival server address	
	provides a Domain Name Server (DNS) address
Hy ISP automatically	
 My ISP automatically Always use the follow Primary DNS served 	
 My ISP automatically Always use the follow 	Ang:
 My ISP automatically Always use the follow Primary DNS served 	Ang:
 My ISP automatically Always use the follow Primary DNS served 	Ang:

≻ STEP 6

Enter the username and password that was assigned by the ISP, and click **NEXT** (Figure 5.14).

Figure 5.14 Internet account logon information page.

Internet Connection Wizard	×
Step 2 of 3: Internet account logon information	×,
Type the user name and password you use to log on to your ISP. Your user name may also be referred to as your Member ID or User ID. If you do not know this information, contact your ISP.	
User name: minweiss Bassword:	
< Back Mext>	Cancel

➤ STEP 7

Enter a name for this connection under **Connection name** (Figure 5.15). This name can be any name you choose, and is only used to identify this particular dial-up connection. Click **NEXT** and proceed to Step 10.

➤ STEP 8

The Local area network Internet configuration page appears (Figure 5.16) only if you chose to connect to the Internet via a LAN. If you chose to connect via a dial-up connection, proceed to the next step.

You can select an automatic configuration, or you can elect to manually specify the proxy. Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 5.15 Configuring your computer page.

Internet Connection Wizard Step 3 of 3: Configuring your computer	× 米
Information about your Internet account is grouped together as a dial-up connection and labeled with a name you provide.	42
Type a name for the dial-up connection. This can be the name of your ISP or any name you want to use.	
Connection name: My Never Busy ISP	
< Back Next >	Cancel

NOTE

Many LAN environments with a connection to the Internet use a proxy server. A proxy server filters information and improves performance. The proxy is the middleman between the client (e.g., Web browser) and the Internet Server (e.g., www.syngress.com). Through a process called *caching*, the proxy first checks to see if it can fulfill the client's request locally to improve performance. A proxy server can also filter requests and deny client access to a specific Internet resource.

≻ STEP 9

The wizard will walk you through the process of configuring an Internet e-mail account (Figure 5.17).

If you do not want to set up an Internet mail account, select **No**, and proceed to Step 14.

To set up an Internet mail account, select Yes, and click NEXT.

Figure 5.16 Local area network Internet configuration.

Internet Connection Wizard Local area network Internet configuration	× ×
Select the method you would like to use to configure your proxy settings. If you are not sure which option to select, select automatic discovery or contact your network administrator. Automatic configuration may override manual settings. To ensure the use of manual settings, disable automatic configuration.	
Automatic Configuration	
Automatic discovery of proxy server [recommended]	
Use automatic configuration script	
Address	
Manual Prosy Server	
< Back Next>	Cancel

Figure 5.17 Set Up Your Internet Mail Account page.



≻ STEP 10

Enter a **Display name** (Figure 5.18). This name will appear in the From field of all outgoing messages that you send from this account. Click **Next** to continue.

Figure 5.18 Your Name page.

Internet Connection Wizard		×
Your Name		ž
When you send e-mail, y Type your name as you r	our name will appear in the From field of the outgoing message. would like it to appear.	
Display name:	John Smith	
	For example: John Smith	
	< Back Next>	Cancel

≻ STEP 11

Enter the e-mail address that you wish people to reply to, when you send mail from this account (Figure 5.19), and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 12

In this step, you have several options (Figure 5.20).

- First, select what type of incoming mail server you will be using. Your choices include:
 - IMAP. Internet Message Access Protocol
 - **POP3**. Post Office Protocol v.3
 - HTTP. Hypertext Transfer Protocol

Many e-mail servers use POP3; however, the use of the newer IMAP is growing. HTTP mail is generally used for Web-based e-mail if supported. Because many Web-based e-mail services rely on advertisements for revenue, most do not allow for this method of mail retrieval. Figure 5.19 Internet E-mail Address page.

nternet Connection Wizard		12
Internet E-mail Address		卷
You ensil address is fit	e address offer people use to send e-mail nessages to you.	
E coal address	[milt@danum.com]	
	For example: conserve@wiccosoft.com	
	17 - V. BN	
	(Back Next >	Cancel

- After selecting the server type, you need to specify the server name under Incoming mail server, and specify an Outgoing mail (SMTP) server. If you do not know the addresses to enter here, contact your mail administrator.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 5.20 E-mail Server Names page.

E-mail Server Names	
My incoming mail gerver is a Incoming mail (PDP3, IMAP	POP3 IMAP HTTP
pop. domain.com	
An SMTP server is the serve	er that is used for your outgoing e-mail.
Outgoing meil (SMTP) serve	
Outgoing mail (SMTP) serve	
Outgoing mail (SMTP) serve	
Quigoing mail (SMTP) serve	
Quigoing mail (SMTP) serve	

➤ STEP 13

You may have previously entered an account name and password for your Internet account; however, your mail account will usually require a separate account name and password.

- Enter the required information under **Account name** and **Password** (Figure 5.21).
- Select the **Remember password** check box if you do not want to have to enter your password each time you connect to get your mail.

Figure 5.21 Internet Mail Logon page.

Type the account nar	ne and password your Internet service provider has given you	
Account name:	[invih	
Password	100100	-
II usua latamat ann fan i	Remember password	
	arovider requires you to use Secure Password Authentication all account, select the "Log On Using Secure Password Neck box.	
Log on using Secur	e Password Authentication (SPA)	

- If your provider requires you to use Secure Password Authentication, place a check in the corresponding check box. If you are not sure, it is best to leave this box unchecked.
- Click **Next** when finished.

➤ STEP 14

This concludes the Internet Connection Wizard. The Completing the Internet Connection Wizard page will display (Figure 5.22). If you wish to immediately connect to the account you just set up, be sure to place a check mark in the specified box. When ready, click **FINISH**.



Figure 5.22 Completing the Internet Connection Wizard page.

Connect to a Private Network through the Internet

Windows 2000 has built-in Virtual Private Network (VPN) support. A VPN uses public wires such as the Internet to securely connect two or more nodes (Figure 5.23). In order to safely transport information over a public network, a VPN uses tunneling protocols such as point-to-point tunneling protocol (PPTP) or layer two tunneling protocol (L2TP). Microsoft Windows 2000 makes it easy to connect to a VPN via the Network Connection Wizard.

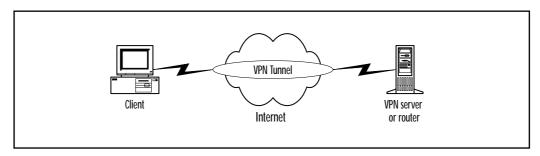
≻ STEP 1

From the **Network Connection Type** page (Figure 5.2), ensure that **Connect to a private network through the Internet** is selected, and click **Next**.

≻ STEP 2

Enter the destination address of the computer or network (Figure 5.24). You may use the host name such as domain.com, or the numerical IP address of the VPN that you want to connect to. Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 5.23 A VPN connects two systems via a virtual tunnel through the Internet.



≻ STEP 3

- Specify who can use this connection (Figure 5.4).
- Ensure **For all users** is selected if you want this connection made available to all users.
- Select **Only for myself** if you want this connection to be used only by the user currently logged on.
- Click Next.
- If you selected **For all users**, proceed to the next step; otherwise, proceed to Step 5.

Figure 5.24 Destination Address page.

Destination Address Image: Second	twork Connection Wizard			
connecting. Host name or IP address (such as microsoft com or 123.45.6.78)	Destination Address What is the name or address of the destination	on?		Ś
		puter or network.	towhich you are	
192.168.1.101	Host name or IP address (such as microsoft)	com or 123.45.6.7	78):	
	192.168.1.101			_
		_		
<back next=""> Cancel</back>		< Baok	Next>	Cancel

➤ STEP 4

By choosing to make your connection available to others, you are also given the option to allow other computers to access the dial-up connection (Figure 5.5).

- To allow other computers on your local network to access through this dial-up connection, select the Enable Internet Connection Sharing for this connection box.
- Additionally, you can check Enable on-demand dialing, which will cause the computer to automatically dial the connection when another computer tries to gain access to external resources. To allow on-demand dialing, you must first enable Internet Connection Sharing.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.
- ≻ STEP 5
 - Enter a name for this connection (Figure 5.6). This will conclude the wizard and save the connection in the Network and Dial-up Connections folder.
 - You can optionally create a shortcut for this connection on your desktop by selecting the Add a shortcut to my desktop box. Click FINISH to close the wizard.

Accept Incoming Connections

By allowing incoming connections, you can authorize specific individuals to be able to gain access. The following steps show you how to allow a stand-alone server the ability to accept incoming connections. Keep in mind, however, if you wish to configure incoming connections for a computer that is a member of a domain, use the Routing and Remote Access Configuration Wizard discussed later in Chapter 9, "Create Shared Folder Wizard."

➤ STEP 1

From the **Network Connection Type** page (Figure 5.2), ensure that **Accept incoming connections** is selected, and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 2

• A list of devices available for incoming connections will be displayed (Figure 5.25).

Figure 5.25 Devices for Incoming Connections page.

Network Connection Wizard Devices for Incoming Connections You can choose the devices your computer uses to accept incoming connections.
Select the check box next to each device you want to use for incoming connections. Connection devices:
Properties <back next=""> Cancel</back>

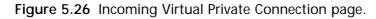
- Select the devices you wish to use by placing a check in the available box.
- Some devices may allow additional configuration via the wizard. To configure the connection device from within the wizard, rightclick **PROPERTIES**. If you cannot configure the specified device at this time, a dialog box will alert you that you must configure the individual device after the wizard has completed.
- Click Next.

➤ STEP 3

Specify if you want to allow incoming connections to create a VPN connection to this computer (Figure 5.26). Select the appropriate radio button under **Choose whether to allow virtual private connections**, and click **NEXT.**

➤ STEP 4

- Place a check mark next to the accounts that you want to grant access for incoming connections (Figure 5.27).
- In this example, there are only two available accounts, but your system may have many more. If you want to add and delete accounts, click **ADD** and **DELETE**, respectively.



Network Connection Wizard
Incoming Virtual Private Connection Another computer can create a virtual private connection to your computer through the Internet or another public network.
Virtual private connections to your computer through the Internet are possible only if your computer has a known name or IP address on the Internet.
Choose whether to allow virtual private connections:
Allow virtual private connections
C Do not allow virtual private connections
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

Figure 5.27 Allowed Users page.

Network Connection Wizard
Allowed Users You can specify which users can connect to this computer.
Select the check box next to the name of each user you want to allow to connect to this computer. Note that other factors, such as a disabled user account, may affect a user's ability to connect.
Users allowed to connect:
Z ⊉ Administrator ☐ ∯ Guest
Add Delete Properties
< Back Next> Cancel

- To configure the properties (Figures 5.28 and 5.29) for each user, highlight the user and click **Properties.**
- After returning to the Allowed Users page, click **Next**.

Figure 5.28 General tab of user properties.

Administrator Properties		? ×
General Calback		
User name:	Administrator	
Full name:	Uphn Smith	
Password		
Confirm password:	10010000000	
	OK Car	ncel
		~

Figure 5.29 Callback tab of user properties.

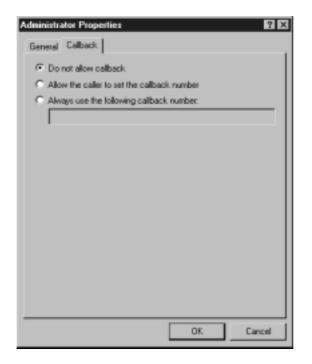


Figure 5.28 shows the available properties from the General tab of the allowed users properties. The username is grayed out and cannot be changed. You may, however, enter the Full name and incoming password for the user. Click **O** κ to return to the **Allowed Users** page.

Figure 5.29 shows the available properties from the Callback tab of the allowed user properties. The three choices include:

- **Do not allow callback** is the default choice.
- Allow the caller to set the callback number adds security by having the computer call back the user attempting to gain access at a number specified by the user.
- Always use the following callback number also adds security by having the computer call back the user attempting to gain access; however, this selection does not allow the user to specify a callback number. Rather, the callback number is set to one location. An example would be an employee who telecommutes, but the only place he or she dials in from is home.

Click **O**K to return to the **Allowed Users** page.

➤ STEP 5

In addition to allowing dial-in users access to the dial-up server, you can also use the Networking Components page (Figure 5.30) to select networking components that you want to enable for use by incoming calls.

Figure 5.30 Networking Components page.

Network Connection Wizard
Networking Components Networking components enable this computer to accept connections from other kinds of computers.
Select the check box next to the name of each networking component you want to enable for incoming connections.
Networking components:
Install Uninstall Properties
Description
Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks.
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

- To configure the individual properties of the networking component, click **Properties**. The property sheets for TCP/IP and File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks are shown in Figures 5.31 and 5.32.
- When you have finished configuring the networking properties, click **NEXT**.

Figure 5.31 Incoming TCP/IP Properties.

ncoming TCP/IP Properties
Network access
P Allow callers to access my local area network
TCP/IP address assignment
Assign TCP/IP addresses automatically using DHCP
C Specify TCP/IP addresses
France
Τα
Total:
Allow calling computer to specify its own IP address
0K. Cancel

From the TCP/IP Properties page, you can allow dial-in users to gain access outside of the dial-in server to the LAN by selecting **Allow** callers to access my local area network.

Next, configure the TCP/IP address assignment by selecting one of the following:

- Assign TCP/IP addresses automatically using DHCP. This will allow a DHCP server to automatically assign users a temporary IP address.
- Specify TCP/IP addresses allows the connecting hosts to be assigned an IP address from a pool of addresses based on a base IP and mask address.
 - Enter available IP addresses in the From and To boxes
- Allow calling computer to specify its own IP address permits users to specify the IP address they will connect with. You might consider this if you have a dial-in user who has a predefined address on the network.

Figure 5.32 File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Properties.

File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Propertie Server Optimization	3 1 2 1×		
Optimization Minimize memory used Balance Maximize data throughput for file sharing Maximize data throughput for file sharing			
Maximize data throughput for network applications Make browser broadcasts to LAN manager 2 x clients			
OK.	Cancel		

WARNING

If you select "Assign TCP/IP addresses automatically using DHCP" and a DHCP server is not present on your network, Windows 2000 will automatically assign an address in the 169.254.xxx.xxx range by using the Automatic IP addressing feature.

The property sheet for File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks (Figure 5.32) allows you to optimize the connection for dialin users. You can choose from four choices:

- Minimize memory used. Best used for a small number of clients.
- **Balance**. Best used for file sharing, print sharing, and other services, and when serving as a workstation at the same time.
- Maximize data throughput for file sharing. Best used for file and print sharing.

 Maximize data throughput for network applications. Best used for distributed applications such as SQL.

Finally, check **Make browser broadcasts to LAN manager 2.x clients** if you want LAN Manager 2.x clients on your network to be able to browse for resources on this computer.

NOTE

Be careful of assigning users the ability to specify their own IP address. If the user enters an IP address that is already assigned and in use on the network, conflicts and problems may arise.

≻ STEP 6

Enter a name for this connection. This will conclude the wizard and save the connection in the Network and Dial-up Connections folder. Click **FINISH** to close the wizard.

Connect Directly to Another Computer

Use the Network Connection Wizard to create a direct (cable) connection to another computer.

≻ STEP 1

From the **Network Connection Type page** (Figure 5.2), ensure that **Connect directly to another computer** is selected, and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 2

When creating a direct cable connection, you have the option to specify the role of the system (Figure 5.33). You may select one of the following two options, and click **Next** to continue:

- Host, if this computer has the information to be accessed
- **Guest**, to access information on a host computer.

NOTE

If the system is a member of a domain, you cannot use this wizard to host a direct connection. You must use the Routing and Remote Access Service. Figure 5.33 Host or Guest page.

Network Connection Wizard			
Host or Guest To connect two computers, specify which a	me you are using.		Ŋ
Choose the role you want for this computer.			
Host This computer has the information yo	u want to access.		
C Buest This computer will be used to access	information on the he	ost computer.	
	< Back	Next>	Cancel

≻ STEP 3

Next, select a connection device from the **Select a Device** page (Figure 5.34). Many direct cable connections use a serial port (COM1 or COM2) via a null modem cable. Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 5.34 This is the device that will be used to make the connection page.

Network Connection Wizard			
Select a Device This is the device that will be used to make	the connection.		Ŋ
Select a device:			
Communications Port (CDM1)			
Communications Port (COM1) Communications Port (COM2) Direct Passilel (LPT1)			, in the second se
	< Back	Next>	Cancel

➤ STEP 4

- If you selected **Host** in Step 2, skip to Step 5.
- If you selected **Guest**, you need to specify who can use this connection.
 - Ensure **For all users** is selected if you want this connection made available to other users of this computer and/or other systems.
 - Select **Only for myself** if you want this connection to be used only by the user currently logged on.
 - Click **Next**, and proceed to Step 6.
- ≻ STEP 5
 - Place a check mark next to the accounts that you want to grant access for incoming connections.
 - If you want to add and delete accounts, click **ADD** and **DELETE**, respectively.
 - To configure the properties for each user, highlight the user, and select **Properties.**
 - After returning to the Allowed Users page, click **Next**.

≻ STEP 6

Finally, enter a name for this connection. This will conclude the wizard and save the connection in the Network and Dial-up Connections folder. Click **FINISH** to close the wizard.

Summary

Windows 2000 can support multiple network connections. The Network Connection Wizard allows you to easily set up inbound and outbound connections with minimal protocol and service configuration. To create a network connection, start the Network Connection Wizard. The wizard has multiple options from which to choose, depending on your configuration and networking needs.

From the Network Connection Type page, there are five choices:

- Dial-up to private network
- Dial-up to the Internet
- Connect to a private network through the Internet
- Accept incoming connections
- Connect directly to another computer

Dialing up to a private network connects your telephone line to an ISP or to another modem to gain access to a private network. Dialing up to a private network primarily involves entering a telephone number for the network or system you are connecting to. In addition, you can also elect to configure the connection for multiple users and allow others to share your connection.

Dialing up to the Internet actually launches a second wizard called the Internet Connection Wizard. From this wizard, you can sign up for a new Internet account, transfer an existing account, or set up your connection manually. Signing up for a new account or transferring a current account will cause the wizard to dial the toll-free Microsoft Internet Referral Service, which will download information about ISPs in your area. After you finish setting up the Internet account, the wizard will then walk you through the process of setting up your Internet e-mail account. To set up an e-mail account, you will need information such as your logon name and password, e-mail address, type of mail server, and incoming and outgoing address. If you do not have this information, you will need to contact your provider.

The Network Connection Wizard also allows you to make a connection to a Virtual Private Network. A VPN is most commonly used to securely connect two or more networks over the Internet. The process of connecting to a VPN is very much like the previous wizards; the primary difference is that you will need to enter either a host name or IP address of the VPN destination.

Although most of the options available from the Network Connection Wizard are for outgoing connections, you can also use the wizard to allow incoming connections. You have the option to designate which users are allowed to connect, as well as specify additional security options such as callback. Within this wizard, you will also specify the networking components to enable for incoming connections, and configure the method in which clients are assigned IP addresses.

Finally, you can use the Network Connection Wizard to create a direct cable connection to another system. This process involves selecting the role (i.e., guest, host), and finally selecting the device used to make this connection.

Chapter 6

Managing DHCP Servers



Introduction

DHCP is an excellent way to conserve IP addresses, but it requires the presence of a DHCP server. To configure Windows 2000 as a DHCP server, you must first define a scope of addresses that the server will service. By the end of this chapter, your Windows 2000 server will respond to client DHCP requests based on the scope configurations you create.

Before You Begin

Before beginning, first ensure that you are logged on as an Administrator, and that the DHCP Service is installed. To install the DHCP Service, use the Add/Remove Programs. DHCP is a component of Networking Services located under Add/Remove Windows Components. Finally, you want to ensure that the computer you are configuring as a DHCP server has a statically assigned IP address.

The Purpose of these Wizards

To provide support for DHCP in Windows 2000, use the wizards provided to create scopes, superscopes, and multicast scopes. The wizards provide a quick way to configure the needed scopes to deliver automatic IP addressing and other features.

Information Needed to Work with these Wizards

Before working with any of the scope wizards, ensure that you have the following information ready:

- Creating a scope:
 - A name and a description to assign to the scope
 - Start and end IP address range
 - Subnet mask if one other than the default is required
 - IP addresses to be excluded
 - Default Gateway (router) IP address
 - DNS Server address
 - WINS Server address
- Creating a superscope:
 - A name to assign to the superscope
- Creating a multicast scope
 - A name and a description to assign to the scope
 - Start and end IP address range
 - IP addresses to be excluded

For IT Professionals

What Is DHCP?

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) helps reduce the complexity of manually administrating IP addresses and other TCP/IP configurations. On a network, every client workstation must be assigned an IP address. For large networks, managing these addresses can become a nightmare, as each number must be unique and there is a set amount of addresses available to work with.

For small networks, manually assigning a static IP address may not be a problem; however, larger networks and networks with limited available addresses may want to consider the use of a DHCP server. In addition to being able to automatically assign client IP addresses, a DHCP server provides several benefits, including the ability to specify the client subnet mask, default gateway (router), DNS servers, and WINS servers.

Windows 2000 Server provides a DHCP service you can use to manage IP client configuration and automate IP address and assignment on your network. To learn more about DHCP, RFC 2131 is the latest Request for Comments covering the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol.

Add DHCP Server

With Windows 2000, you can manage many network services remotely from any other server on your network. The DHCP manager provides a simple method to help locate and connect to other Windows 2000 DHCP servers on your network.

To add additional DHCP servers to the DHCP manager on your Windows 2000 server, first open the DHCP manager from the Administrative Tools Menu, right-click the DHCP icon, and select **Add Server**. From the Add Server window, click **Browse**, and then click **Ok** once you have found the server you want to add (Figure 6.1).

The Create Scope Wizard

A *scope* is a range of IP addresses from which DHCP clients can automatically be assigned an IP address.

Figure 6.1 Adding a DHCP server from the DHCP manager.

		DHOP		
DHCP	-	Contents of CHCP	934	
	Allfaren		<u>1×</u>	
		very eurovant to add to your con-	ada	
	(* This and		Dista.	
	100	a second		
	Name	tosant DHOP server.	Addeess	
	- rearra	Contractor and the second second	Addition	
		1 Select Computer		12123
		Loss an SErvice Director	N C	1
		Name Entire Directo		16
		SERVER donain.com	doman.com/Doman.Conitoliero	
		and the second se		
				- 1
	-	1000		_
		None [
		Name [Cancel

≻ STEP 1

To start the New Scope Wizard, right-click the DHCP server from the DHCP manager, and click **New Scope** (Figure 6.2).

➤ STEP 2

The New Scope Wizard welcome page appears (Figure 6.3). Click **Next** to continue.

➤ STEP 3

Enter a name and description to identify this scope (Figure 6.4).

≻ STEP 4

Enter a start and end IP address that can be assigned to a DHCP client from this scope in the **Start IP address** and **End IP address** fields. The **Subnet mask** field is automatically filled in; however, you may modify the subnet mask by changing the **Length** field (Figure 6.5). Click **NEXT**.

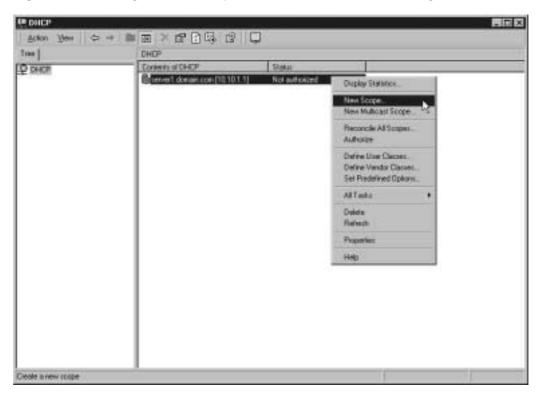


Figure 6.2 Starting the New Scope Wizard from the DHCP manager.

Figure 6.3 Welcome to the New Scope Wizard page.



Figure 6.4 Specifying a name and description from the Scope Name page.

New Scope Wizard	×						
Scope Name You have to p providing a de	rovide an identitying scope name. You also have the option of						
	Type a name and description for this scope. This information helps you quickly identify how the scope is to be used on your network.						
Name:	My Scope						
Description	Assign all workstation addresses						
	< Back Next> Cancel						

TIP

There are three classes of IP addresses. An address consists of a network and host ID portion. Each class, combined with a subnet mask, defines these portions. Additionally, each class has a default subnet mask that may be modified to provide what is called custom "subnetting." The three IP classes and their default subnet masks are listed in Table 6.1.

Table 6.1	IP Address	Classes and	Their Default	Subnet Masks
-----------	------------	-------------	---------------	--------------

IP Address Class	First Octet Range	Default Subnet Mask
Class A	1–126	255.0.0.0
Class B	128–191	255.255.0.0
Class C	192–224	255.255.255.0

Figure 6.5 Defining the Scope IP address range from the IP Address Range page.

New Scope Wizard	×
IP Address Range You define the scope address range by identifying a set of consecutive IP addresses.	J)
Enter the range of addresses that the scope distributes. Start IP address: 192.168.1.4 End IP address: 192.168.1.20	
A subset mask defines how many bits of an IP address to use for the network/subset IDs and how many bits to use for the host ID. You can specify the subset mask by length or as an IP address. Length: 24 = Subset mask: 255 - 255 - 0	
<back next=""> Ca</back>	ncel

➤ STEP 5

Enter a start and end IP address to specify a range of addresses to exclude in the **Start IP address** and **End IP address** fields, and click **ADD** (Figure 6.6). To remove an excluded range, highlight the range in the **Excluded address range** box, and click **REMOVE**. Click **NEXT** to continue.

Addresses included in the exclusion list will not be assigned to DHCP clients. This is important if you have static IP addresses configured on systems not utilizing DHCP. Examples of a system that might not act as a DHCP client and must be added to the exclusion list include routers, file and print servers, DNS servers, and servers requiring a static address for remote connectivity purposes.

➤ STEP 6

Specify the amount of time (lease duration) that you want a client to be able to use an IP address before having to request a new one (Figure 6.7), and click **NEXT**.

Figure 6.6 Adding address exclusions on the Add Exclusions page.

New Scope Wizard
Add Exclusions Exclusions are addresses or a range of addresses that are not distributed by the server.
Type the IP address range that you want to exclude. If you want to exclude a single address, type an address in Start IP address only.
Start IP address: End IP address: 192.168.1.4 192.168.1.6
Excluded address range:
Henove
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

NOTE

You may want to consider reducing the lease duration for certain clients such as dial-up clients, and increasing the lease duration for large and stable networks (assuming you have plenty of IP addresses to go around).

≻ STEP 7

From the Configure DHCP Options page (Figure 6.8), specify if you want to configure additional options.

- Select Yes, I want to configure these options now if you would like the wizard to walk you through the process of providing DHCP clients with additional information, such as the address of default gateways and DNS and WINS servers. Click NEXT to continue.
- Select No, I will configure these options later, and click NEXT to complete the New Scope Wizard. Before clients can receive addresses, however, you will need to first specify any options and activate the scope.

Figure 6.7 Limiting IP address duration on the Lease Duration page.

New Scope Wizard	×
Lease Duration The lease dusation specifies how long a client can use an IP address from this scope.	Q
Lease durations should typically be equal to the average time the computer is connected to the same physical network. For mobile networks that consist mainly of portable computers or dial-up clients, shorter lease durations can be useful. Likewise, for a stabile network, that consists mainly of desktop computers at fixed locations, longer lease durations are more appropriate.	
Set the duration for scope leases when distributed by this server.	
Limited to:	
Days: Hours: Minutes:	
< Back Next>	Cancel

Figure 6.8 Configure additional options from the Configure DHCP Options page.

New Scope Wizard				
Configure DHCP Options You have to configure the most common DHCP options before clients can use the scope.				
When clients obtain an address, they are given DHCP options such as the IP addresses of souters (default gateways), DNS servers, and WINS settings for that scope.				
The settings you select here are for this scope and override settings configured in the Server Options folder for this server.				
Do you want to configure the DHCP options for this scope now?				
Yes, I want to configure these options now				
C No. I will configure these options later				
<back next=""> Cancel</back>				

≻ STEP 8

If you choose to configure additional options, the wizard prompts you to specify the Router or the default Gateway address (Figure 6.9).

Enter one or more IP addresses, and click **ADD**. If you specify more than one default gateway, you may click **UP** or **DOWN** to specify the order in which clients use them. Click **NEXT**.

Figure 6.9 Specify one or more default gateways from the Router (Default Gateway) page.

	is, or default gateways, to be distributed by this scope.	×
IP addess:	Add Renove Up Down	
	<back next=""></back>	Cancel

≻ STEP 9

Specify the DNS servers that you want the DHCP clients to use for name resolution (Figure 6.10).

- If you want clients to use a parent domain to resolve domain names, enter the name of the parent in the **Parent domain** field.
- If you want the clients to use a DNS server on your network, enter the name of the server in the Server name field, and click RESOLVE to have the IP address automatically entered, or you may optionally enter the IP address.
- You may add more than one DNS server by clicking **ADD**. If you specify more than one DNS server, you may click **UP** or **DOWN** to specify the order in which clients use them.
- Click Next.

Figure 6.10 Specify DNS servers from the Domain Name and DNS Servers page.

	×
nd translates domain names used b	5
he client computers on your networ	k to use for
s on your network, enter the IP add	lesses for those
IP address:	
192.168.0.2	Add
	Remove
	Uρ
	Down
<back next=""></back>	Cancel
	he client computers on your networ s on your network, enter the IP add IP address: 192 . 168 . 0 . 2

➤ STEP 10

Specify the WINS servers that you want the DHCP clients to use for name resolution of NetBIOS names to IP addresses (Figure 6.11).

Enter the name of the server in the **Server name** field, and click **Resolve** to have the IP address automatically entered, or you may optionally enter the IP address of the WINS server. You may add more than one WINS server by clicking **ADD**. If you specify more than one WINS server, you may click **UP** or **DOWN** to specify the order in which clients use them. Click **NEXT**.

NOTE

WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) is a used by Windows NT Server for associating a computer's host name with its address. While Windows 2000 supports WINS for compatibility reasons, it being replaced by DNS, the name resolution method used on the Internet.

≻ STEP 11

At this point, you must activate the scope (Figure 6.12). The scope must be active before clients can start receiving address leases. If you

decide not to activate the scope now, you can do so later by selecting the scope and clicking **Activate** from the **Action** menu in the DHCP manager. Click **NEXT**.

Figure 6.11 Specify WINS servers for DHCP clients from the WINS Servers page.

	r IP addresses here er register and resolve N			o query WINS	before they us
Server name:			IP address:		
Server1			192.168	1.2	Add
	Rep	olve	-		Berrove
					Up
			L		Down
To change this Type, in Scope	e behavior for Window I Options.	NO DHOP O	slients modify a	ption 046, 'w1	NS/NBT Node

Figure 6.12 Activate the DHCP scope from the Activate Scope page.

New Scope Wizard Activate Scope Clients can obtain address leases only if a so	cope is activate	d	8 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Do you want to activate this scope now?			
Yes. I want to activate this scope now			
No, I will active this scope later			
	< Baok	Next>	Cancel

➤ STEP 12

Click **FINISH** to close the New Scope Wizard (Figure 6.13).



Figure 6.13 Completing the New Scope Wizard page.

The Create Superscope Wizard

With Windows 2000, you can create superscopes; that is, you can assign IP addresses from multiple logical subnets to DHCP clients on one physical network. In Windows NT, IP addresses for clients are limited to one logical subnet per physical network.

➤ STEP 1

To start the New Superscope Wizard, right-click the DHCP server from the DHCP manager, and click **New Superscope**. The New Superscope Wizard page appears (Figure 6.14). Click **Next**.

➤ STEP 2

Enter a name to identify your superscope (Figure 6.15), and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 3

To create a superscope, select the scopes you want to add from the Available scopes box, and click **Next** (Figure 6.16).

Figure 6.14 New Superscope Wizard welcome page.



Figure 6.15 Identify the superscope from the Superscope Name page.

New Superscop Superscop You have		pe name.		₫ (2) 8
Name:	My Superscope			
		< Back	Next>	Cancel

≻ STEP 4

Click **FINISH** to complete the New Superscope Wizard (Figure 6.17).

Figure 6.16 Add scopes from the Select Scopes page.

New Superscope Wizard	×
Select Scope: You create a superscope by building a collection of scopes.	Ì
Select one or more scopes from the list to add to the superscope.	
Available scopes:	
[10.0.0.0] My Scope	
< Back Next>	Cancel

Figure 6.17 Completing the New Superscope Wizard page.

New Superscope Wizard	
5	Completing the New Superscope Wizard
	You have successfully completed the New Superscope wizard.
	The following superscope will be created:
	Name: My Superscope
	Scopes included in this superscope:
	[10.0.0.0] M _P Scope
	To close this wizerd, click Finish,
	< Back Finish Cancel

The Create Multicast Scope Wizard

A *multicast* is the process of sending a message simultaneously to more than one destination on a network. Multicast DHCP (MDHCP) is used to support dynamic assignment of multicast addresses on the network. Windows 2000 supports MDHCP via multicast scopes.

≻ STEP 1

To start the New Multicast Scope Wizard, right-click the DHCP server from the DHCP manager, and click **New Multicast Scope**. The New Multicast Scope Wizard page appears (Figure 6.18). Click **Next**.

Figure 6.18 The new Multicast Scope Wizard welcome page.



≻ STEP 2

Enter a name and description to identify the multicast scope (Figure 6.19), and click **Next**.

➤ STEP 3

- Enter a start and end IP address to specify a range of addresses in the **Start IP address** and **End IP address** fields (Figure 6.20).
- Specify a Time to Live in the **TTL** field. A TTL is a timer value, which is included in packets sent over a network that indicates how long to hold the packet before discarding it. The TTL number for the multicast scope specifies the number of hops the multicast data will take before being dropped.
- Click Next.

Figure 6.19 Identify the multicast scope from the Multicast Scope Name page.

New Multicast Sco	se Wizard	×
	Name rovide an identifying multicast scope name. You also have the ding a description.	Ĵ
	and description for this multicast scope. This information helps you e multicast scope is to be used on your network.	quickly
Name:	My multicast scope	
Description	My networks multicast scope	
	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 6.20 Specify the range of addresses from the IP Address Range page.

New Multicast Scope Wizard IP Address Range You set the range of IP addresses that define this multicast scope.
The valid IP address range is 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. Start IP address: 224.0.0.0.0
End IP address: 224 . 0 . 0 . 255 Time to Live (TTL) is the number of routers that multicast traffic passes through on your network.
TTL: 32 A
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 4

Enter a start and end IP address to specify a range of addresses to exclude in the **Start IP address** and **End IP address** fields, and click **ADD** (Figure 6.21). To remove an excluded range, highlight the range in the **Excluded addresses** box, and click **REMOVE**. Click **NEXT**.

Figure 6.21 Adding address exclusions from the Add Exclusions page.

DiatlPolities Ent Faldesi 224 0 0 8 224 0 25 Abt	
274 D D D D D 104 D D 76 10 104	
224 0.0 0 224 0.0.23 01	33 B
Exclused addresses	Ht.
11 Maria	
	1220

≻ STEP 5

Specify the amount of time that you want the clients to be able to use an IP address from this multicast scope (Figure 6.22), and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 6

Select whether you want to activate the scope (Figure 6.23). You must first activate the scope before clients can start receiving address leases. If you decide not to activate the scope now, you can do so later by selecting the scope and clicking **Activate** from the **Action** menu in the DHCP manager. Click **NEXT**.

Figure 6.22 Limit IP address duration on the Lease Duration page.

Lases datation checklitypically last the length of time the multical address is expected to the in continuous or obdicated our on the same retrieval to the harves grapp of computer. Because multical addresses are sized to grapp of computer, the duators of multical bases complexies be because the duate scopes. For example, or value of these says to used to set up a value contenence. Set the duators for multical scopes because when dominated by the server. Laster to Tage: Haze: Minute: Dage: Haze: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			cities how long				0
Days Huas Mindae	in continue Because n leases can be used to Set the du	nar michedic withoart ach rightically be over up a vic	det un er fa Inces an dar longe thas ta Iso contensos	ed te group a d'other so	I se tai the sai of acceputers, pes, Fox exam- pes, Fox exam-	na graap of som he dwaton of r ple, a makeast i	sputare. w.diceet
	Street, Mar	and the second second	Minutes:				

Figure 6.23 Activate multicast scope from the Activate Multicasat Scope Page.



≻ STEP 7

Click **FINISH** to complete the New Multicast Scope Wizard (Figure 6.24).

NOTE

The valid IP address range for a multicast scope must be within the Class D IP address range of 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.

Figure 6.24 The Completing the New Multicast Scope Wizard Page.



Summary

Windows 2000 provides an easy way to manage IP address assignment via the DHCP manager. Additionally, Windows 2000 provides added support for superscopes and multicast scopes. Using the wizards provided, you create any of the following three types of scopes:

- Scope
- Superscope
- Multicast scope

A scope is a range of IP addresses that can be assigned to DHCP clients. A superscope allows scopes to be grouped to provide IP addresses from multiple logical subnets to clients on a single physical network. A multicast scope provides support for Multicast DHCP.

Additional DHCP servers can be added to the DHCP manager and managed remotely. To configure a scope on any of the DHCP servers, first start the New Scope Wizard. To start any of the wizards, right-click on the selected server from the DHCP manager and select the available options to create one of three scope types. Keep in mind that you will not be able to create a superscope until you have already created one or more scopes.

To create a scope, start the New Scope Wizard, which will walk you through the steps to create the scope. First, you will need to provide a name and description to identify the scope. Next, you provide a range of addresses from which clients will be assigned an IP address. Additionally, if there are any devices that require a static IP address, you can add exclusions so that certain IP addresses will not be distributed. You can also set the duration for the scope that specifies when a distributed IP address will expire. The wizard also allows you to configure additional options that allow clients to obtain an address of a default gateway, DNS server and WINS server, when they obtain their IP address.

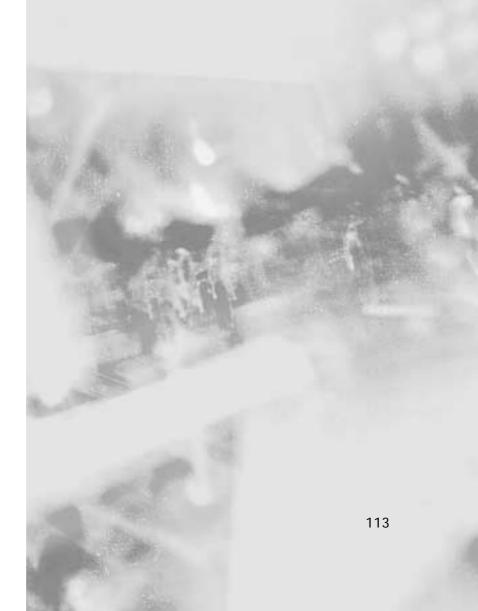
To create a superscope, start the New Superscope Wizard. After providing a name to identify your superscope, you then select from a list of available scopes to add to the superscope. For this reason, you will need to first create one or more scopes.

Creating a new multicast scope is much like creating a regular scope. Start the New Multicast Scope Wizard, and enter a name and description to identify the multicast scope. Next, enter a valid IP address range and any exclusions; multicast addresses must fall within the Class D IP address range.

After creating the scopes, they will appear in the DHCP snap-in, and your server will be ready to respond to client DHCP requests.

Chapter 7

Create A New Zone Wizard (DNS)



Introduction

As part of making the server a domain/Active Directory server, Windows 2000 prompted you to specify a DNS server. If one for the domain was not available, you were offered the option of making the domain controller a DNS server. Using the Create a New Zone Wizard, you can add new DNS zones to that DNS server or another Windows 2000 DNS server on your network.

Before You Begin

Although DNS is commonly associated with the Internet, Windows 2000 also uses DNS to locate computers on the local network. Before beginning, you should ensure that the DNS service is installed. The DNS service may have already been installed during setup. If not, you can install DNS from the Windows Component Wizard (see Chapter 12, "Windows Component Wizard"). Finally, if you are using dynamic assignment of IP addresses on your network, you should first ensure that you assign a static IP address to the computer on which you are going to install and configure DNS.

Working with DNS is relatively new for many who have only worked with Windows NT in the past. Therefore, it is recommended that you review the Requests for Comments (RFC) about DNS and Dynamic DNS (DDNS): RFCs 1034, 1035, 2136, and 2137.

The Purpose of this Wizard

This wizard walks you through the process of configuring forward and reverse lookup zones. The purpose of these zones is to provide name resolution for resolving host names to IP addresses, and vice versa.

NOTE

Microsoft's implementation of DNS is not required for Windows 2000. Although Windows 2000 requires a DNS server, you may use any server that supports Service Location resource records and the Dynamic Update Protocol. For more information on these standards, see RFCs 2052 and 2136.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

To create zones for a DNS server, you will need the following:

- Creating a forward lookup zone
 - Names for the zones you create
- Creating a reverse lookup zone
 - Names for the zones you create
 - Your network's ID

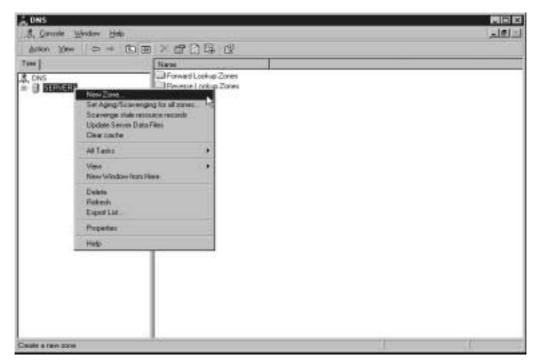
The Create A New Zone Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the New Zone Wizard.

- Open DNS in the Administrative Tools menu.
- Right-click the server for which you want to create a new zone (Figure 7.1).
- Select **New Zone** from the pop-up menu.

Figure 7.1 Right-click on the server for which you want to create a new zone.



≻ STEP 2

Click Next at the New Zone Wizard welcome page (Figure 7.2).

Figure 7.2 The New Zone Wizard welcome page.



≻ STEP 3

Select the type of zone you want to create from the Zone Type page (Figure 7.3), and click **NEXT**. You can select from one of the following three types:

- Active Directory-integrated. Instead of storing zone data in standard files, you can store the data within Active Directory. There are several benefits from choosing this method, including:
 - Multimaster dynamic update
 - Secure dynamic updates
 - Additional fault-tolerance support
- **Standard primary**. This creates a standard zone text file. To take advantage of the many features of Windows 2000, it is recommended that you select the Active Directory-integrated zone.
- Standard secondary. This type of zone only creates an additional copy of an existing zone to provide for load balancing. Selecting this zone type allows you to browse for other zones from which you can copy.

Figure 7.3 The Zone Type page.

lew Zone Wizard	×
Zone Type Windows can obtain and store zone information in three different ways.	
Select the type of zone you want to create:	
Active Directory-integrated	
Stores the new zone in Active Directory. This option provides secure updates and integrated storage.	
C Standard primary	
Stores a master copy of the new zone in a text file. This option facilitates the exchange of DNS data with other DNS servers that use text-based storage methods.	
C Standard secondary	
Creates a copy of an existing zone. This option helps balance the processing load of primary servers and provides fault tolerance.	
<back next=""> Cance</back>	

NOTE

To take advantage of the data storage and replication engine provided by an Active Directory-integrated zone, you must run a compatible DNS server located on a domain controller.

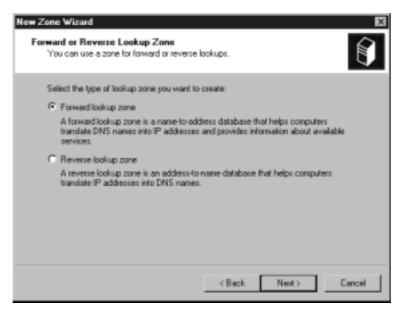
≻ STEP 4

Select from one of two types of lookup zones (Figure 7.4).

- A forward lookup zone resolves host names to IP addresses.
- A **reverse lookup zone** resolves IP addresses to host names. If you select this option, proceed to Step 7.

NOTE

You must configure at least one forward lookup zone for DNS. Reverse lookup is not required for Windows 2000 and Active Directory, but it can be useful for diagnosing various networking problems. Figure 7.4 Forward or Reverse Lookup Zone page.



≻ STEP 5

Enter a name for the forward lookup zone, and click **Next** (Figure 7.5). If you previously chose to create an Active Directory-integrated zone, proceed to Step 9 after entering the zone name.

A zone name is normally named after the highest domain that the zone has authority over. For example, a zone name of domain.com would cover domain.com and marketing.domain.com.

If you chose to create a standard secondary forward lookup zone, you can click **BROWSE** to find a zone to copy (Figure 7.6).

≻ STEP 6

Select the zone file that you want to use from the Zone File page from one of the following two choices (Figure 7.7):

- **Create a new file with this filename**. This option will create a new file with a default name based on the name of the DNS zone entered earlier. Alternatively, you may enter a new name.
- Use this existing file. This option allows you to use an existing file. To select this option, you must have first copied the existing file into the %SystemRoot%\system32\dns folder.

After making your selection, click NEXT and proceed to Step 9.

Figure 7.5 Forward Zone Name page.

New Zone Wiz	rard	×
Zone Name What do	e o you want to name the new zone?	
Type the	e name of the zone (for example, "example.microsoft.com.")	
Name:	example domain.com	
	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 7.6 Click BROWSE to search for a forward lookup zone object type.

B, Carnaine Xindaw Help Action Yeer ⇔ → (B)	• 3 - 3	<u>ام</u>
Cen Zane Waterd	×	
Zone Name What do you want to name	the new Jone?	
Type the name of the zone	(for seargle, "learning mount con.")	
Name	Bonte. []	
	Unimum 22.23	1
	Look n: 🛃 DNS 💽 🗾	
	None Type Data	
	a Selectore	
	Selector Departage ForwardLookup Zones *	

Figure 7.7 Forward Zone File page.

New Zone Wizard
Zone File You can create a new zone file or use a file copied from another computer.
Do you want to create a new zone file or use an existing file that you have copied from another computer?
Create a new file with this file name:
example.domain.com.dn:
C Use this existing file:
To use an existing file, you must first copy the file to the %SystemPloot%\system32\dns folder on the server running the DNS service.
< Back Next > Cancel

≻ STEP 7

- Identify the reverse lookup zone (Figure 7.8). You may specify the zone by selecting either of the following:
 - Network ID
 - Reverse lookup zone name
- If you select Network ID, enter the **network ID**. An IP address consists of a network portion and a host portion. By entering a network ID, you are omitting any of the host addresses. Entering a network ID will automatically create the reverse lookup zone name.
- If you did not enter a network ID, you can optionally input the reverse lookup zone name.
- Click NEXT. If you previously chose to create an Active Directoryintegrated zone, proceed to Step 9 after entering the zone name or network ID.

If you selected to create a standard secondary reverse lookup zone, you can click **BROWSE** to find a zone to copy (Figure 7.9).

Figure 7.8 Reverse Lookup Zone page.

New Zone Wizard 🛛 🛛
Reverse Lookup Zone A reverse lookup zone is an address-to-name database that helps computers translate IP addresses into DNS names.
To identify the severae lookup zone, type the network ID or the name of the zone.
Network ID: 192 .158 . If you use a zero in the network ID, it will appear in the zone name. For example, network ID 169 would create zone 169 in add, app. and network ID 169.0 would create zone 0.169 in add, app.
Reverse lookup zone name: 168.192.in-addr.aspa
< Black Next > Cancel

Figure 7.9 Click BROWSE to search for a reverse lookup zone object type.

Carrante Mirekow Hinta Tarrett Street		<u>5</u>
Revense Lookup Zone A sevense bolkup zone m an addemnio- translate IP addemnes into DNS names	same database that helps computers	
To identify the severice kookup zone, type P Network (D): P you use a zero in the restwork (D). restwork (D) 1839 workd creater zone 1 creater zone (D) 1839 workd creater zone 1	Biomet	12
Prevene lockup zone nome	Look in: L	
	Selection Objections Revenie Lookup Zonei	
	Cencel	24

➤ STEP 8

Select the zone file that you want to use from the Zone File page from one of the following two choices (Figure 7.10):

- **Create a new file with this filename**. This option will create a new file with a default name based on the name of the DNS zone entered earlier. Alternatively, you may enter a new name.
- Use this existing file. This option allows you to use an existing file. To select this option, you must have first copied the existing file into the %SystemRoot%\system32\dns folder.

After making your selection, click Next.

Figure 7.10 Reverse Zone File page.

New Zone Wizard 🛛 🕅
Zone File You can create a new zone file or use a file copied from another computer.
Do you want to create a new zone file or use an existing file that you have copied from another computer?
F Create a new file with this file name:
168.192.in-addr.aspa.dns
C Use this existing file:
To use an existing file, you must first copy the file to the %SystemRoot%\system32\dns folder on the server running the DNS service.
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 9

The Completing the New Zone Wizard page will display a summary of what was completed (Figure 7.11). Click **FINISH** to close the New Zone Wizard.

When you create a zone, two resource records are automatically added underneath the zone: the Start of Authority (SOA) and the Name Server (NS). To add additional resource records, use the DNS manager, right-click the zone for which you want to add additional resource records, and click **New**. Numerous types of records can be added. Table 7.1 lists the most common resource records and their descriptions.



Figure 7.11 Completing the New Zone Wizard page.

Table 7.1 Common Ty	pes of Resource Records
---------------------	-------------------------

Resource Record	DNS Manager Name	Description	
SOA	Start of Authority	Marks the beginning of a DNS zone and identifies which name server is authoritative.	
А	Host	Match domain names to IP addresses.	
CNAME	Alias	Specifies an alias or another name for the specified host. Use a CNAME to map more than one name to a single IP address.	
PTR	Pointer	Points to another location in the domain namespace. Used to con- struct the in-addr.arpa domain for converting IP addresses to domain names.	
NS	Name Server	Supplies the domain name of a name server for the zone.	
MX	Mail Exchanger	Identifies the mail exchanger for a specific domain.	

A feature of Microsoft's implementation of DNS is its support for *dynamic updates*. As described in RFC 2136, dynamic updates allow clients to dynamically update their resource records when changes occur. An obvious benefit of this is decreased administration. If you create an Active Directory-integrated zone, Windows will default to secure dynamic updates. If, however, you create a zone, you can still enable dynamic updates by opening the properties for your zone and selecting **Yes** from the **Allow Dynamic Updates** pull-down list (Figure 7.12).

Figure 7.12 Allow dynamic updates via a zone's properties.

🚓 Carnalia Mindaw Hala				_DX _011		
Action Yes > + 10 1	i× cr C G C					
Tem	Nates	Type	D#a			
DNS SERVER1 Server1 Annual Lookup Zones Reverse Lookup Zones Reverse Lookup Zones	example, domain.com Pro	operties	M 8	3 #		
	General Start of Authority (SDA) None Servery WINS Zone Transfers					
	Stellar Running		Faue			
	Typic Paincey		Dwige.			
	Zone file name.					
	issumple.domain.com.dnp					
	Allow dynamic updeles?	No	E			
	To set aging/is averaging properties					
	2			1		
		DK.	Carcal	1		
2			1			

Summary

The DNS Manager (DNS snap-in) allows you to configure and manage DNS in Windows 2000. Before you can use DNS, however, you will need to create a forward lookup zone. Additionally, you can also create a reverse lookup zone.

Using the Create New Zone Wizard, you can create forward lookup zones and reverse lookup zones. A forward lookup zone resolves names to IP addresses, whereas a reverse lookup zone resolves IP addresses to names. The wizard allows you to create a forward lookup or reverse lookup zone based on the following three types:

- Active Directory-integrated
- Standard primary
- Standard secondary

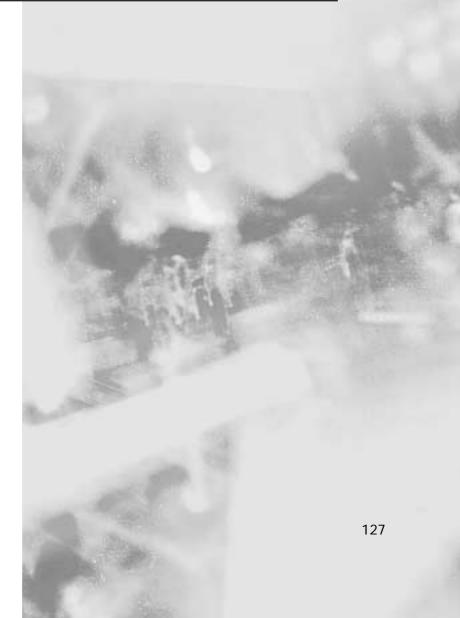
Choosing to create an Active Directory-integrated zone is the preferred method in Windows 2000, primarily because of the secure, dynamic, and integrated features this method provides. You may, however, also create a standard primary zone, which stores a master copy of the zone in a text file, or you may create a standard secondary zone, which creates a copy of an existing zone to provide load balancing and fault tolerance.

After selecting the type of zone you want to create, you need to provide a name for the zone. Choosing to create an Active Directory-integrated zone will cause the zone name to be integrated within Active Directory. On the other hand, a standard zone will create a file based on the name you enter.

The Create New Zone Wizard configures the DNS service by creating the new zones; however, you can use the DNS Manager to add additional resource records, as well as configure the dynamic properties of DNS.

Chapter 8

Routing and Remote Access Configuration Wizard



Introduction

Windows 2000 Server can act as a remote access server, allowing your users access to the company network via either dial-up connection or direct connections over the Internet. In order for remote access services to work, the Windows 2000 server must route between the remote connections and the company network. Routing can also be applied to a server with two or more network interface cards (NIC). By the end of this chapter, you will have configured Windows 2000 for remote access clients and as a router.

Before You Begin

The remote access component is installed by default when you install Windows 2000, but it is not enabled. Before enabling the remote access server, you should ensure that you have installed all necessary hardware components such as modems or NICs. For this wizard, we will be enabling and configuring remote access on the local server. The local server is always listed by default; however, you may add additional servers to the console management screen if needed.

Before dealing with the Routing and Remote Access Server Service, you should familiarize yourself with the Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS). RADIUS is an authentication server that provides authorization and authentication information to a network server to which a client is attempting to connect. Windows 2000 can act as a RADIUS server, RADIUS client, or both. RFCs 2138 and 2139 provide detailed information about RADIUS.

To configure the Routing and Remote Access Server Wizard, you must be logged on as an Administrator.

Depending on your network and your needs, you may require one or more of the following hardware devices:

- A certified Network Driver Interface Specification (NDIS) network (LAN or WAN) adapter
- One or more modems and an available COM port
- Multiport adapter
- ISDN adapter
- X.25 smart card

This walkthrough uses TCP/IP as the only protocol needed for the remote clients. Depending on your needs, you may need to install additional protocols.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Routing and Remote Access Server Wizard allows you to configure your system as a dial-in or Virtual Private Network (VPN) server to accept incoming connections. Earlier, you saw that you could use the Network Connection Wizard to also configure inbound connections; however, you can only use that wizard if your computer is not a member of a domain. The Routing and Remote Access Server is a powerful tool for configuring inbound connections, and is used when the computer is a member of a domain.

NOTE

Routing and Remote Access Service (RRAS) also functions as a softwarebased router. This Windows 2000 router should only be used by those already familiar with routing protocols and services.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

Before performing the following tasks, ensure you have the following information:

- Start and end IP address range. You may use DHCP. In this walkthrough, we also show you how to specify from a pool of IP addresses.
- Primary and Alternate RADIUS Server address.
- RADIUS shared secret password.

The Routing and Remote Access Configuration Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard.

- Open Routing and Remote Access from the Administrative Tools menu.
- Right-click the server for which you want to configure RRAS (Figure 8.1).
- Click Configure and Enable Routing and Remote Access from the pop-up menu.

Figure 8.1 Right-click on the server you want to configure and enable for RRAS.

Tone	Server Statut	Serve Statu					
Routing and Rena	Sever Name 1 SERVER1	Serve type Microsoft Windows 2000 Server	State Stopped Lunconiquedt	Fors Total Uptive			
Server Statue	Configure and Esable Route	ig and Resola Access					
	All Tasks						
	Delete Retwork						
	Propetiei						
	Heb						
		1					
		21.5					
		21.5					

➤ STEP 2

Click **NEXT** at the Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard welcome page (Figure 8.2).

≻ STEP 3

There are several options available from the Common Configurations page (Figure 8.3). Although each of the choices will walk you through the same steps, depending on your selection, the wizard will transparently configure and enable the needed services and protocol.

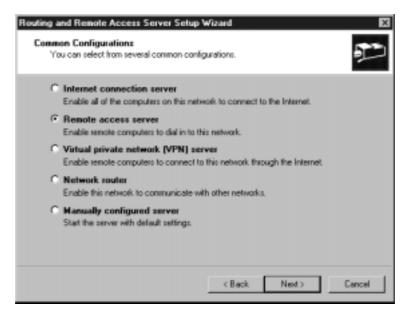
To continue with configuring the remote access server, select **Remote access server**, and click **NEXT**.

NOTE

Once you perform the remote access server setup, you will be unable to perform any of the other options from within the wizard unless you first disable routing and remote access. This wizard focuses on the initial setup of the remote access server; however, after configuring the remote access server, you can access the options available to configure the other features via the Properties of the remote access server. Figure 8.2 The Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard welcome page.



Figure 8.3 Common Configurations page.



➤ STEP 4

Ensure the required protocols are available on your server (Figure 8.4). The most common protocol in use today is TCP/IP.

- If the required protocols are listed, ensure Yes, all of the required protocols are on the list is selected, and click NEXT.
- If the required protocols are not listed, select No, I need to add protocols. When you have finished installing the needed protocols, restart the wizard.

Figure 8.4 Remote Client Protocols page.

Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard	×
Remote Client Protocols The protocols required for remote client access must be available on this server.	1
Verify that the protocols required on this server for remote clients are listed below.	
Protocols:	
ТСРАР	
F Yes, all of the required protocols are on this list	
C No, I need to add protocols	
< Back Nest > Cancel	

≻ STEP 5

Select the method for assigning IP addresses to remote clients. You may specify to assign IP addresses by selecting one of the following choices (Figure 8.5):

- Automatically. Select Automatically if you use a DHCP service to automatically assign IP addresses. If you select Automatically, and do not have a DHCP server, Windows 2000 will automatically assign an address using the Automatic IP addressing feature. If you select this option, proceed to Step 7.
- From a specified range of addresses. Select this option to specify in the next step a range of IP addresses that the server will automatically assign to clients.

Figure 8.5 IP Address Assignment page.



≻ STEP 6

If you choose to apply IP addresses from a specified range, you will need to perform the following procedures from the Address Range Assignment page (Figure 8.6):

- Click Add.
- Insert a Start IP address and an End IP address.
- Click OK to close the New Address Range dialog box, and click NEXT to continue.

➤ STEP 7

The next step is to decide if you want to use a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service server (RADIUS) to manage multiple remote access servers (Figure 8.7).

- If you have an existing RADIUS server that you would like this remote access server to use, select **Yes**, **I want to use a RADIUS server**, and click **NEXT**.
- If you do not want to use a RADIUS server, select No, I don't want to set up this server to use RADIUS now, click NEXT, and proceed to Step 9.

Figure 8.6 Entering an address range from the Address Range Assignment page.

Routing and Remote A	locess Server Setup V	Wizard	×
Address Range As You can specify to remote clients.		s server will use to assign addresses to	
	ranges (static pools) that y he first range before contin	you want to use. This server will assign all o nuing to the next.	N
From	To	Number	
Ы	ew Address Range Type a starting IP address addresses in the range. Start IP address: End IP address: Number of addresses:	and either an ending IP address or the nu 192, 168, 0, 1 192, 168, 0, 30 30	
_		OK Can	CH

RADIUS is an industry-standard protocol that provides services for distributed dial-up networking. RADIUS servers are primarily used by ISPs and corporate remote access users. These servers take connection information from a RADIUS client, which is usually a dialup server, and then authenticate and authorize the client request.

≻ STEP 8

If you selected to use a RADIUS server in the previous step, you will need to specify the RADIUS server (Figure 8.8). If you selected to not use RADIUS, proceed to the next step.

- Enter the name for a primary RADIUS server and an alternate if you have one.
- Enter the shared secret password to connect to the RADIUS server.

≻ STEP 9

You have finished setting up Routing and Remote Access (Figure 8.9).

- If you want to display help about managing the remote access server, select the available check box.
- Click **FINISH** to close the wizard.

Figure 8.7 Managing Multiple Remote Access Servers page.

Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard	×
Managing Multiple Remote Access Servers You can manage all of your remote access servers centrally.	Þ
A Remote Authentication Dial/In User Service (RADIUS) server provides a central authentication database for multiple remote access servers and collects accounting information about remote connections.	
Do you want to set up this remote access server to use an existing RADIUS server?	
No. I don't want to set up this server to use RADIUS now	
(* Yes, I want to use a RADIUS server)	
Windows provides a RADIUS solution called Internet Authentication Service (IA as an optional component that you can install through Add/Remove Programs.	5)
< Back Next > 0	ancel

Figure 8.8 RADIUS Server Selection page.

Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard	×
RADIUS Server Selection You can specify the RADIUS servers that you want to use for authentics accounting.	stion and
Enter the primary and alternate RADIUS servers that this server will use t authentication and accounting.	or remote
Primary RADIUS server: redus1	_
Alternate RADIUS server: Indus2	
Type the shared secret (password) that is used to contact these RADIUS	S pervers.
Shared secret:	
< Black, Next >	Cancel

Figure 8.9 Completing the Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard page.



NOTE

After proceeding once through the wizard, you are no longer able to repeat the wizard on the same server for other services. Use the Routing and Remote Access manager to configure user accounts, set permissions, and configure advanced remote access options.

Configuring Routing and Remote Access

Once you have worked through the wizard, many additional configuration changes can still be made from within the Routing and Remote Access manager.

- After completing the Routing and Remote Access Wizard, open Routing and Remote Access from the Administrative Tools menu.
- Right-click the server icon, and select **Properties** (Figure 8.10).

Figure 8.10 To configure the RRAS server, select Properties.

Reading and Remote	And and a contract of the state of the stat	
Tree	SERVERT Incal	
Booling and Renote J Server Status Server Status Anothing Inter A Renote Acce A Renote Acce Server Renote Acce	Norm Image Interfaces: Image Interfaces: Image Interfaces: Image Interfaces: Image Interfaces: Deable Revelop and Remote Access Image Interfaces: All Task:: Image Interfaces: Deables: Image Interfaces: Deables: Image Interfaces: Deables: Image Interfaces: Deables: Image Interfaces:	
	Experimental second	
	Hat	
Opens property share to the	Land selection	

➤ STEP 1

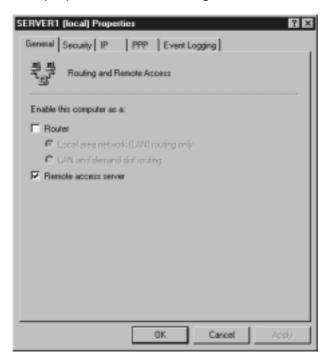
From the server Properties, there are five tabs from which you can configure additional properties (Figure 8.11):

- General
- Security
- IP
- PPP
- Event Logging

If you performed the wizard earlier in this chapter, the box enabling this system as **Remote Access Server** from the **General** tab should be checked. This indicates that the computer is enabled as a remote access server, and is ready to support dial-up or VPN connections. In addition, you can also select **Router**, which will enable the server to forward network traffic between networks. If you select to enable the computer as a router, you need to choose one of the following types of routing the server will perform:

- Local Area Network (LAN) routing only configures the server as a LAN-only router, and does not allow demand dial or VPN connections.
- LAN and demand dial routing configures the server as a LAN and demand dial router, which will support VPN connections.

Figure 8.11 General properties tab for Routing and Remote Access.



≻ STEP 2

From the **Security** tab (Figure 8.12), you can configure the authentication and accounting provider for your server. Depending on whether you are using a RADIUS server, you can configure authentication and accounting for either Windows or Radius. From the Authentication Provider pull-down list, you can select one of the following:

• Windows Authentication. A Windows account database is used to authenticate connections.

• **RADIUS Authentication**. A RADIUS server is used to authenticate connections.

Click **Authentication Methods** to select the methods by which the server will authenticate remote sessions or to allow allowed connections not requiring authentication. Table 8.1 outlines the various authentication protocols supported.

Authentication Method	Description
Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP)	Uses the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) for authentication. EAP supports various authentication schemes such as Generic Token Card, MD5- Challenge, Transport Level Security (TLS) for smart card support, and S/Key.
Microsoft Encrypted Authentication Version 2 (MS-CHAP v2)	Uses Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MS-CHAP) version 2 for authentication. This method provides stronger encryption and is required (or version 1) for encrypted Point-to-Point (PPP) or Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) con- nections.
Microsoft Encrypted Authentication (MS- CHAP)	Uses the Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MS-CHAP) for authentica- tion. This method (or version 2) is required for encrypted Point-to-Point (PPP) or Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) connections.
Encrypted Authentication (CHAP)	Uses the Message Digest 5 (MD-5) Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) for authentication. This challenge-response authentica- tion protocol uses an industry-standard hashing scheme for encryption.
Shiva Password Authentication Protocol (SPAP)	Uses the Shiva Password Authentication Protocol (SPAP) for authentication. This method is more secure than plaintext, but less secure than CHAP or MS-CHAP.
Unencrypted Password (PAP)	Uses the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) for authentication. Passwords are sent in plaintext. Typically used only when two systems cannot negoti- ate another method.

Table 8.1 Authentication Methods Available in Windows 2000 RRAS

Authoptication Mathed Description

Finally, you can select one of the following accounting providers, which maintain a log of connections.

- Windows Accounting. Maintains log files located in the Remote Access Logging folder available from the RRAS console.
- **RADIUS Accounting.** Maintains log information, which is stored on a RADIUS server.

Figure 8.12 Security properties tab for Routing and Remote Access.

SERVER1 (local) Properties
General Security IP PPP Event Logging
The authentication provider validates credentials for remote access clients and demand-dial routers.
Authentication provider:
Windows Authentication Donfigures
Authentication Methods The accounting provider maintains a log of connection requests and sessions. Accounting provider:
Windows Accounting Earligues
OK Cancel Apply

➤ STEP 3

From the **IP** tab, you can make IP configurations to your RRAS server (Figure 8.13). You can select from the following:

- **Enable IP routing** allows packets to be forwarded from one routing interface to another. This must be enabled for remote access clients to access the entire network, or they will only be able to access resources on the server.
- Allow IP-based remote access and demand-dial connections permits IP-based remote access demand-dial connections.
- IP address assignment

- Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) allows clients to be dynamically assigned IP addresses from a DHCP server.
- Static address pool allows clients to be dynamically assigned IP addresses from a specified static range of addresses.

Figure 8.13 IP properties tab for Routing and Remote Access.

Genera IP E IP A IP 4 Th (*	81 (local) P a) Security nable IP routia low IP-based address assign is server can- Dynamic Ho Static address	IP PP remote acce went essign IP add st Configurati	ss and dema	nd dal conne	Ctions		
	Fram	To	Number	IP Addr	Mask		
	From To Number IP Addr. Mask Add. EdR Remove						
			OK.	Cancel	Apply		

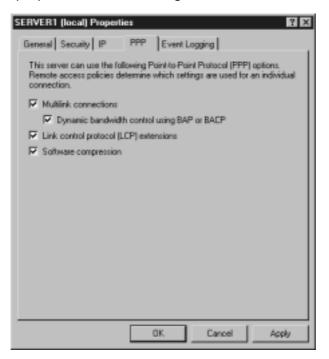
≻ STEP 4

From the **PPP** tab, you can specify the server to use the following point-to-point protocol options (Figure 8.14):

- Multilink connections allows remote clients and demand-dial routers to combine more than one physical connection into one logical connection.
 - Dynamic bandwidth control using BAP or BACP permits the server to use Bandwidth Allocation Protocol (BAP) and Bandwidth Allocation Control Protocol (BACP) to control multiple physical clients for remote clients and demand-dial routers. These protocols can control bandwidth by dynamically deleting and adding physical connections.

- Link control protocol (LCP) extensions allows LCP to send Time-Remaining and Identification packets, as well as request callback during negotiation.
- Software compression allows data sent to be compressed.

Figure 8.14 PPP properties tab for Routing and Remote Access.



≻ STEP 5

From the **Event Logging** tab, you can specify how logs and warnings are written to Event Viewer using the following options (Figure 8.15):

- Log errors only will log only errors in the System Log.
- **Log errors and warnings** will log errors and warnings in the System Log.
- Log the maximum amount of information will log everything in the System Log.
- **Disable event logging** will not make any log entries in the System Log.

Additionally, you can check **Enable Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) logging** so connection establishment events are written to the Ppp.log file in the Tracing folder of the systemroot. Figure 8.15 Event Logging properties tab for Routing and Remote Access.



Summary

Routing and Remote Access Services for Windows 2000 provide powerful functionality for enabling a server as a router or remote access server. Remote access allows dial-up communication services and VPN services for users to access the server and even the network. In addition, RRAS provides routing services over LAN and WAN environments.

Routing and remote access is managed via the Routing and Remote Access snap-in, but first it must be configured and enabled. Once the service has been started, you cannot repeat configuration via the wizard without first disabling the remote access service; therefore, this chapter concentrates on the remote access server option, from which all other options can later be configured manually.

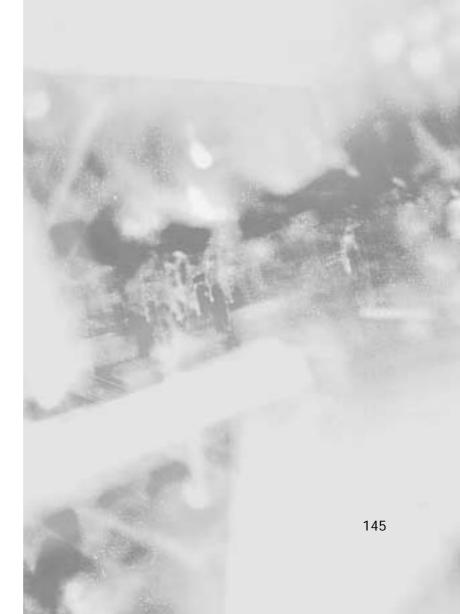
After launching the Routing and Remote Access Server Setup Wizard, proceed with the Remote access server option. After selecting the required protocols, you can specify how IP addresses will be assigned to remote clients. Remote access also allows a RADIUS server to be used as a central authentication and accounting database for more than one remote access server.

Once remote access has been set up, it can be further configured via the RRAS manager. The manager provides many options for specifying additional options, including:

- General routing and remote access
- Authentication and accounting
- IP routing and assignment
- Point-to-Point protocol
- Event logging

Chapter 9

Create Shared Folder Wizard



Introduction

Sharing data is one of the fundamental reasons we create networks and servers. Sharing data in Windows 2000 is similar to Windows NT, although the addition of a wizard makes the process simple and straightforward. By the end of this chapter, you will have shared a folder of data with other users on the network.

Before You Begin

Before you make data available from your Windows 2000 workstation or server, you should have a thorough understanding of fundamental security issues. These would include any organizational policies that might be in place, corporate security issues surrounding the data you intend to share, and any other security issues pertinent to your organization. You should also understand Share security, and NTFS File System security models and how to use them.

Understanding these issues will allow you to confidentially allow users who need access to your data to do so, while protecting your files from access by unauthorized users, accidental deletion, and other catastrophes.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Create Shared Folder Wizard allows you to provide access to folders on your system's disk from across the network. In Windows 2000 Advanced Server, this type of operation might be performed by a System Administrator as part of the process to set up a File Server computer.

There are also times when the user of a Windows 2000 Professional workstation might want to make certain folders available to others, such as when sharing files with department members that are common to a given project.

This wizard is available on both Windows 2000 Advanced Server and Professional

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

- An existing folder to share, or the location on the drive to create one.
- Who should have what kind of access to the data. You should know if it is acceptable for Administrator accounts to have full access to the data in the folder, and what type of access user accounts should have (Read, Full Control, or None).

• A name for the shared folder and a short description of what it holds.

The Create Shared Folder Wizard

Sharing a folder is a two-part process. You need to first identify the folder that is going to be shared and give it a share name. The second step is to set security on the share, thereby determining who can do what to your folder when coming across the network.

≻ STEP 1

After starting the wizard, the Create Shared Folder window appears. First, identify the folder to share and give it a name (Figure 9.1). The Computer field will display the name of your computer, or the computer you are working on if you are running the wizard on a remote machine

- In the Share name field, enter the name that you want to use for this share. This is the name that people will see when they browse the network, or want to connect to this folder using a UNC name. In this case, the UNC name for this share would be \\ENGINEERING\NetRoot.
- In the Share description field, enter an optional description of this share. You might enter information about what files can be found here, what project the share relates to, or the share's owner.
- Click Next.
- ➤ STEP 2

The second part of the process to share a folder is to set security on the share (Figure 9.2).

NOTE

The security settings here are for controlling access to data from the network. They are separate from, and work in conjunction with, NTFS file system security. Restricting users from accessing or modifying data here will not have an impact on their ability to access the data in this folder if they are able to log on to the machine locally.

Figure 9.1 The Create Shared Folder form.

Create Shared Folder	×
ĨC#	Computer: ENGINEERING Eolder to share: C: Vinetpub Bigesce Share name: NetRoot Share gescription: Root Folder for Internet Files
	< <u>₽</u> ø% <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

You may select one of the predefined, typical security settings:

- All users have full control. Selecting this option allows all users to read and change any data in the files located in this folder.
- Administrators have full control. This option allows all Administrators (local, domain, and members of Administrative groups) to read and modify data in this folder. All other users have only read access.
- Administrators have full control; other users have no control. This option allows all Administrators (local, domain, and members of Administrative groups) to read and modify the files in the folder; all others are denied access.
- **Customize share and folder permissions.** This selection will allow you to grant access by users and group to this share. If one of the above permission models fits your needs, you may click **FINISH** and you are done. If not, select this option, and click **CUSTOM**.

TIP

If you have specific security requirements other than those provided in the wizard, you should take the time to understand the interaction between Share security and NTFS security. Read up on it in the Help system—search on "Best practices for access control."

Figure 9.2 Setting security on the share.



➤ STEP 3 (OPTIONAL)

If the predefined permission sets do not meet your needs, you may decide to grant permissions to specific users or groups. If you have selected Custom in the security portion of the Create Shared Folder Wizard, you will be presented with the Customize Permissions dialog box (Figure 9.3).

Figure 9.3 The Customize Permissions dialog box.

ustomize Permissions Share Permissions Security	¥ ×
Name St Everyone	Agid Benove Dejauk
Permissions: Full control Change Read	Allow Deny
	OK Cancel

This dialog lists the users and groups that have been granted custom permissions on this folder. Note that by default, the Everyone group has Full control permission.

The following steps will allow you to create a custom permission entry in this list:

- In the Customize Permissions dialog box (Figure 9.3), click ADD.
- You will be presented with the Select Users, Computers, or Groups dialog box. Select the user or group you wish to add to your Custom Permissions list for this share, and click ADD (Figure 9.4).

Figure 9.4	The Select	Users,	Computers,	or	Groups	dialog	box.
------------	------------	--------	------------	----	--------	--------	------

=1 Select Users, Computers, or Groups		2 X
Look in: ENGINEERING		
Name	In Folder	<u>.</u>
TERMINAL SERVER USER		
Administrator	ENGINEERING	
S Guest	ENGINEERING	
IUSR_NADA	ENGINEERING	
2 IWAM_NADA	ENGINEERING	_
1 TsintemetUser	ENGINEERING	
Administratore	ENGINEERING	-
Add Check Names		
		OK Cancel

- When you are returned to the Customize Permissions dialog box (Figure 9.5), the user or group you selected will be on the list; you may now select the appropriate check boxes to create the custom permission.
- If you select the Security tab from the Customize Permissions dialog box, you can modify the NTFS permissions on a folder. Notice that these are related to, but separate from, the share permissions. Refer to Figure 9.6 to see an example entry in this list.

Name DEveryone		Agd
Guest (ENGINEERING\Guest)		Beniove
	-	Dejauk
Bermissions:	Allow	Deny
Full control		S S S
Change Read		
11040		

Figure 9.5 Back to the Customize Permissions dialog box after adding a user account.

Figure 9.6 Setting NTFS permissions from the Customize Permissions dialog.

OK.

Cancel

Name		Agd
SE Everyone Guestr (ENGINEERING\Guest	*)	Benove
Permissions: Full Control	Allow	Deny
Modify	5	
Read & Execute List Folder Contents	5	
Read		H
White		
Adgenced	n parent to propag	jate to this
	ОК	Cancel

NOTE

The Security tab (Figure 9.6) shows the parameters that are available to you.

- The Allow inheritable permissions from parent to propagate to this object check box is selected by default.
- NTFS permissions will trickle down through the directory tree structure and be included in calculating a user or group's final NTFS permission set in this folder.
- Click ADVANCED to set up advanced NTFS options such as file system auditing and ownership (Figure 9.7).

Figure 9.7 Advanced NTFS settings.

Access Contr	al Settings for Inetpub		? ×]
Permissions	Auditing Dwner			
Permission 8				
Туре	Name	Permission	Apply to	
Alow	Guests (ENGINEERIN	Full Control	This folder, subfolders and files	
The Allow	Everyone	Full Control	This folder, subfolders and files	
Agd	Benove	View/Edit		
This permis	sion is defined directly on this	object. This permi	asion is inherited by child objects.	
T Alexandre			this address	
_	eritable permissions from pare missions on all child objects			
permissio		and enable propag	aton or mierkable	
		DK.	Court I cont	
		DK	Cancel (300)	

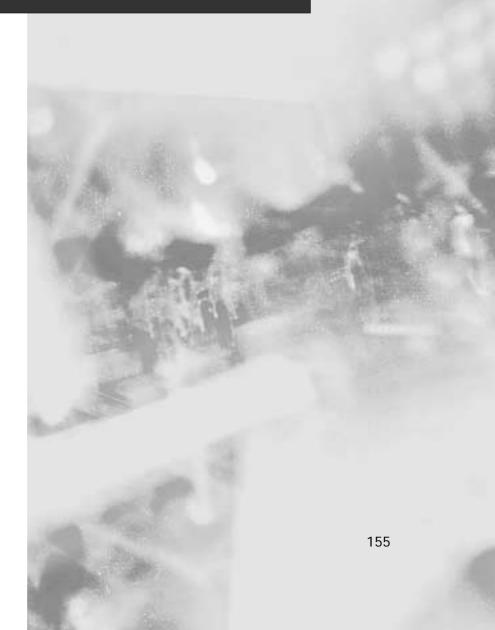
Summary

Using the Create a Shared Folder Wizard, you have shared a folder for other users to access via the network. You started the wizard, pointed to an existing folder, gave it a share name, and set security on the share.

Access to both the Share permissions and the NTFS permission settings are available through the dialog boxes presented via the Custom security option. These can get complicated quickly, so make sure you need these custom settings before going down this path.

Chapter 10

Add Printer Wizard



Introduction

Adding and sharing printers is a common function of Windows 2000 System Administrators. Similar to sharing data folders, sharing printers has a place in both the server room and the workgroup. Windows 2000 offers several enhancements to the print server functions in Windows NT, including support for connection to printers via the Internet. By the end of this chapter, you will know how to add local and network printers to your Windows 2000 machine, and share those printers with other users on the network.

Before You Begin

If you are unfamiliar with the Microsoft print architecture, there is a concept that you should understand regarding Microsoft terminology. Microsoft refers to a physical printer as a "print device," and the software that controls that device as a "printer." In other words, the machine sitting on your desk into which you put paper and toner is called a "print device," not a printer. The software inside your computer that holds print jobs and sends them out to the print device is what Microsoft refers to as a "printer." This can be somewhat confusing to people who are used to putting paper in their "printers."

The rather logical explanation for this is that the Microsoft architecture assumes nothing about the physical device to which you are sending data for output. This device could be what most people call a printer; it could also be a fax, a modem, a plotter, or any other output device that makes sense in this context.

The Purpose of this Wizard

This wizard provides a quick way to share or add local and network printers.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

- A locally attached or network print device
- For a network printer, the server name and printer name
- A Plug and Play compliant printer, or knowledge of the printer's manufacturer and model
- A device driver provided either by Microsoft or the printer manufacturer

The Add Printer Wizard

Local Printer

≻ STEP 1

When you start the Add Printer Wizard, you will be presented with a screen (Figure 10.1). This screen simply tells you that you are about to install a printer.

• Click Next.

Figure 10.1 Starting the wizard.

Add Printer Wizard	
	Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard This wizard helps you instal a printer or make printer connections.
(/ b)	To continue, click Next.
$\leq //$	
	< Back Next> Cancel

➤ STEP 2

In this example, we are going to connect a local printer to our system. Figure 10.2 shows the second screen of the Add Printer Wizard. The steps to fill out this form are as follows:

- Select Local Printer.
- If the printer supports Plug and Play, select the Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer check box.
- Click Next.
- If Plug and Play detects your printer successfully, proceed to Step 5.

Figure 10.2 Selecting either a local or network printer.



≻ STEP 3

Again, if you are configuring a Plug and Play printer, you may jump ahead to Step 5 of this section. Otherwise, you will need to know the port identifier to fill in the next form. This is most likely going to be LPT1, but may be different depending on your computer manufacturer and model, type of printer, and other peripherals you may have connected to this machine.

The form to tell Windows 2000 where this printer is connected is shown in Figure 10.3. You should fill it out as follows:

- If the printer is attached directly to the computer via a physical interface, select **Use the following port**, and select the physical port that connects the printer.
- If the port is not listed, or this is a TCP/IP connected printer, select Create a new port and provide the IP address of the printer, or the name of a port to create.

NOTE

When creating a printer for a locally attached device, the majority of the configuration can be done from the existing list of ports.

Figure 10.3 Selecting the local printer port.

dd Printer Wizard Select the Printe Computers com	r Port municate with printers that	sugh ports.	Ø
Select the port new part.	you want your printer to us	e. If the part is not liste	d, you can create a
Use the fall	wing polt		
Pat	Description	Printer	-
LPT1:	Printer Port		
LPT2:	Printer Port		
LPT3	Printer Port		_
COM1: COM2	Secial Port Secial Port		
COM2	Setal Port		-
	computers use the LPT1:	port to communicate wi	th a local printer.
-			
C Deate a ne			
Type:	Local Port		-
		< Back	Next > Cancel

≻ STEP 4

For non–Plug and Play printers, you will need to know the manufacturer and model of your print device. Figure 10.4 is an example of selecting a Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet.

If you are connecting a print device that is not supported directly by Windows 2000, click **HAVE DISK** to install a third-party driver.

➤ STEP 5

Enter the printer name (Figure 10.5).

≻ STEP 6

The Printer Sharing window of the Add Printer Wizard allows you to share the printer with others (Figure 10.6). From the users' perspective, it will be a networked printer. There are two options available to you:

- **Do not share this printer**. This will prevent this printer from being available to network users.
- Share as. This will make your printer available for others to use. In this case, you must provide a share name for your printer. This may be different from the name you gave it in Step 5, but will default to the name entered in Step 5.

Figure 10.4 Select the manufacturer and model of your printer.

Add Printer Wizard Add Printer Wizard The manufacturer and	model determine which printer to use.	Ŷ
disk, click Have Dir compatible printer.	turer and model of your printer. If your printer cam ik. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer of	
Manufacturers: Fujitsu GCC Generic Gestetner HP IEM IEM	Printers: HP Color LasesJet 4500 HP Color LasesJet HP Color LasesJet PS HP Color LasesJet SM HP Color LasesJet 5/5M PS HP Core Lat	■ Have Disk
	<back next=""></back>	Cancel

Figure 10.5 Naming the printer.

Add Printer Wizard			
Name Your Printer You must assign a name for this printer.			Ŷ
Supply a name for this printer. Some programs combinations of more than 31 characters.	do not supp	oft server and print	er name
Printer manue:			
Eng_CLJ5			
	< <u>B</u> ack	Nex>	Cancel

Figure 10.6 Sharing a printer.

Add Printer Wizard	
Printer Sharing You can share	this printer with other network users.
	er you want this printer to be available to other users. If you share this of provide a share name.
C Do not she	re this printer
G Share as:	Eng_CLJ5
	< Back Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 7

Next, enter a location and comment for your printer (Figure 10.7). Both of these fields are optional and may be left blank.

Figure 10.7 Location and comment.

You can d helpfuito u	escribe the location and capabilities of this printer. This information may be users.
Location	4th Floor - NW Corner
<u>C</u> omment:	Color Laser Printer for Hasdeware Engineering Team

≻ STEP 8

Almost finished! The last decision to make is whether to print a test page (Figure 10.8). Unless there is a very specific reason, such as the printer is not yet physically attached, choose **Yes**. This will test all of the plumbing between the computer and the paper.

Figure 10.8 Print a test page?

Add Printer Wizard Print Text Page To confirm that the printer is installed prope	erly, you can print	a lest page.	Ŷ
Do you want to print a test page?			
(* Yes			
C Ng			
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

≻ STEP 9

The last step is a review of the settings (Figure 10.9). If everything looks correct, click **FINISH**.

Network Printer

≻ STEP 1

Believe it or not, connecting to a network printer is easier than creating a new one. Since the person who installed the printer initially needed to know the manufacturer and model of the print device, all you really need to know to attach to a network printer is the network name of the printer. To add a new Network Printer, start the **Add Printer Wizard** (Figure 10.10).

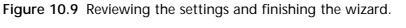




Figure 10.10 Starting the Add Printer Wizard.

Add Printer Wizard	
	Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard This wisard helps you install a printer or make printer connections. To continue, click Nest.
	<book next=""> Cancel</book>

► STEP 2

Since we have determined that this printer is on the network, when the Add Printer Wizard dialog (Figure 10.11) appears, select **Network printer**.

Figure 10.11 Selecting the Network printer option.

Add Printer Wizard Local or Network Printer Is the printer attached to your computer?
If the printer is directly attached to your computer, click Local printer. If it is attached to another computer, or directly to the network, click Network printer.
C Local printer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
Ngtwork printer
< Back Next> Cancel

➤ STEP 3

There are two options in the Locate your Printer dialog box (Figure 10.12).

- If printing to a printer on the Internet, select Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet and enter the URL of the printer here.
- If the printer is on your organization's network, select **Type the printer name**, or click **NEXT** to browse for a printer. In this example, the UNC name for a printer has been filled in. If this field is left blank and you click **NEXT**, you will be taken to the Browse For Printer dialog (Figure 10.13).

≻ STEP 4

Figure 10.13 is an example of browsing for a printer on the network. A printer attached to the server named ENGINEERING has been selected. The printer is called ENG_CLASER.

Figure 10.12 Locate Your Printer dialog box.

Locate Your Printer	
How do you want to locate your printer?	
If you don't know the name of the panter	, you can browse for one on the network,
What do you want to do?	
Type the private none, or click Next	to browne for a primer
Norm: WSALESVEAMPRINTER	
C Garnest to a pinter on the Internet of	a on your intransf.
URL	
nur. 1	
our 1	
one 1	

Figure 10.13 Browsing for a printer on our network.

Browne For Printer Locale you release pinter		4
Eleter HP Colo Lateralet 5		
Shared printers		
A Microarth Windows Network CALIFORNIA CALIFORNIA CHISTOCALIFOR DOMAIN NETAPP	HP Cas Late 14:5	
Printer externation		
Connert Status: Ready	Documents Wailing 0	
	(Back Heat) C	arcel

≻ STEP 5

Notice that Windows 2000 did not ask about the printer manufacturer and model! This is because in the Windows printing world, a printer is software. As such, the printer has already been configured for the print device. Just point to the printer and go!

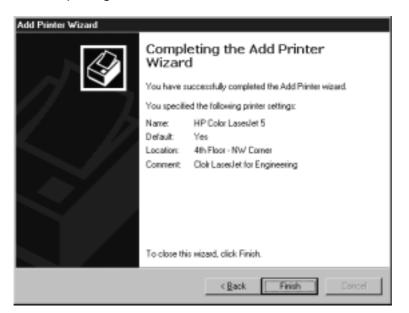
The last configuration item is to tell Windows 2000 if this to be the default printer. In the screen shown as in Figure 10.14, select **Yes** to have this printer used unless the user explicitly selects another. Figure 10.14 Answering the default question.



≻ STEP 6

The wizard presents a summary sheet (Figure 10.15). If everything looks okay, click **FINISH**.

Figure 10.15 Completing the Add Printer Wizard.



Summary

In this chapter, we learned how to connect a local print device by creating a new printer, and how to connect to a printer that is shared on the network. Unlike many network print environments, it is much easier to connect to a network printer than to create a new local printer.

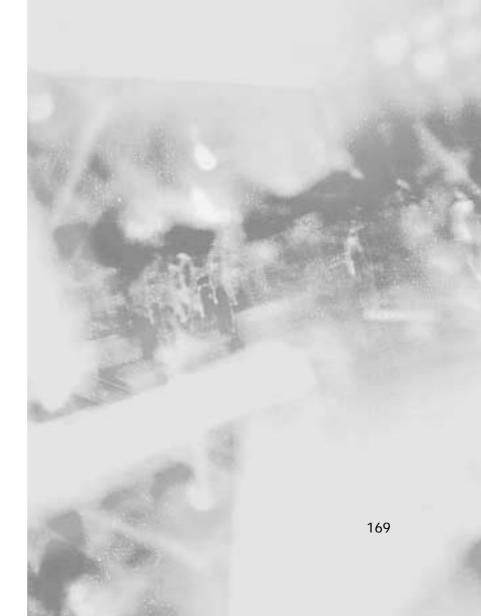
If the local printer is Plug and Play compliant and supported directly by Windows 2000, creating a local printer is very easy. If not, you must know the manufacturer and model of your printer, and perhaps provide driver software from the manufacturer.

When connecting to a shared network printer, all you really need to know is the name of the machine on which the printer is running, and the printer's name.

Always print a test page to make sure that the printer is working correctly.

Chapter 11

Internet Information Services (IIS) Wizards



Introduction

Internet Information Services (IIS) consists of several components, including an FTP, Web, and SMTP server. Each offers a service creation wizard that allows Administrators to create additional virtual servers to their IIS server. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to use these wizards to add new IIS services.

Before You Begin

To say that the Internet has changed the way businesses work is a huge understatement. Behind all of the Web pages, e-mail, and other objects in Cyberspace are servers. Internet servers, be they Web servers, File Transfer Protocol (FTP) servers, SMTP (mail) servers, or others, make up the internal organs of the Net.

Administering these servers can be a daunting task. The wizards provided by Windows 2000 help a great deal in the management of these critical Internet components. While the wizards will assist in the mundane tasks of server management, they do not make design or implementation decisions. Before creating a new server site, the Administrator should have a good understanding of what the underlying technologies are. Any good book that provides an overview of Internet services and their architecture would be, at minimum, a good primer to read prior to putting up new services.

The Purpose of these Wizards

The wizards described here are not available on Windows 2000 Professional. They are used to configure the services of Internet Information Server (IIS) which is Microsoft's all-purpose server designed to deliver high-performance Internet services to small workgroups, companies, and the world. As such, only Windows 2000 Server and above provide these wizards.

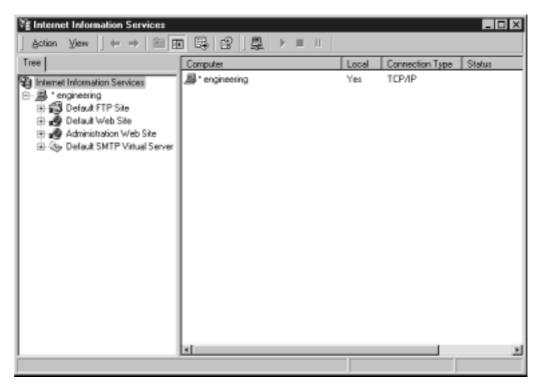
Information Needed to Work with these Wizards

- DNS names for any servers that are to be created
- IP addresses of the server and services that are to be installed
- Domain names for Web, SMTP servers that are to be created
- Security requirements for the data that is to be made available
- A thorough, functional understanding of the differences among the HTTP, FTP, and SMTP protocols

NOTE

All of the wizards shown in this chapter can be launched from the Internet Information Services Manager shown in Figure 11.1.

Figure 11.1 The Internet Information Services Manager.



The FTP Site Creation Wizard

≻ STEP 1

When launched, the FTP Site Creation Wizard displays a welcome screen (Figure 11.2).

• Click Next.

Figure 11.2 The FTP Site Creation Wizard welcome screen.



≻ STEP 2

The first parameter that the wizard needs is a description for the new site (Figure 11.3). This description is what is displayed when managing the site. The users of the FTP site will never see this.

- Enter a short description about the FTP site in the Description field.
- Click Next.

➤ STEP 3

The next step is to assign an IP address and port number to the new FTP site (Figure 11.4).

- Select one or all IP addresses to use for this site.
- Enter a value for the TCP port, or accept the default.
- Click NEXT.

One of the strengths of the IIS FTP server is that it allows direct selection of the IP addresses to which it will respond. This works in conjunction with the Microsoft TCP/IP stack, in which you can bind one or more IP addresses to a single card. Using these two features together allows a single machine, with a single network adapter, to behave as if it were several machines. Each machine can have its own entry in the Domain Name Service (DNS). With this technique, FTP and Web sites can appear to be completely unrelated as different companies, organizations, or departments, when in actuality they are all housed on a single machine.

Notice that the IP address field is completed as a pull-down menu. This menu gets its entries from the IP addresses already configured on the machine. Any legal value may be entered in the TCP port field; the default value is 21.

Figure 11.3 FTP Site Description dialog box.

P Site Creation Wizard			E
TP Site Description Describe the FTP site to help administrators identify	rit.		S.
Type a description of the FTP site.			
Description:			
Engineering Files			
< <u>B</u>	sek 🗌	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

TIP

Figure 11.4 The IP Address and Port Settings dialog box.

FTP Site Creation Wizard IP Address and Port Settings You must specily an IP address and port setting for the FTP site.	<u>®</u> ■
Enter the IP address to use for this FTP site. IP address: MULTINEEDFACED Type the TCP port for this FTP site (default = 21). <u>TCP port</u> 21	
< Back Newt>	Cancel

≻ STEP 4

The path to the root of the new FTP site must be provided in the FTP Site Home Directory dialog box (Figure 11.5). This is the directory that FTP users will be taken to when connecting to the site. All other directories for this FTP site will appear as subdirectories of this point of the file system. FTP users will not be able traverse up the file system tree from this directory.

- Enter the fully qualified path to the directory that is to be the root of the new FTP site, and proceed to Step 5.
- Click NEXT.

If the exact path to the FTP site's home directory is not known, or for the sake of convenience, BROWSE may be clicked to open a directory browse window (Figure 11.6).

- Navigate the browse tree, highlighting the desired folder to be used as the FTP root directory.
- Click Ok.

➤ STEP 5

The final step of the FTP Site Creation Wizard is to define permissions to the FTP site. User-level permissions can be applied to the FTP site by requiring authentication from the users when logging on to the site. The permission set here as shown in Figure 11.7 will override any user-level permissions and limit all users to read or write access. If both read and write permissions are granted here, the user's permissions as defined at the NTFS file system level will be applied. The read and write check boxes here limit the maximum available rights to the FTP site.

Figure 11.5 The FTP Site Home Directory page.

: Creation Wizard	×
te Home Directory home directory is the root of your FTP content subdirectories.	Ø
er the path to your home directory.	
h:	
EngSite/FTP	Bjowse
< Back. Next >	Cancel

Figure 11.6 Browsing for a directory.

Browse for Folder	? X
Select a directory:	
	_
E Desitop	-
My Documents My Computer	
E 31/2 Floppy (A1)	
E- Local Disk (C:)	
Documents and Settings	
B-C Englite	
B-C WWW	
e-Ci Instpub	_
Program Files	100
WINNT WINNT P P Connect Disc (D:)	-1
5 30 307 F 30 307 F 30 30 F 1	_
OK Can	el .

For example, if the Read permission is selected, and the user has adequate NTFS permissions, then reading will be allowed. If Write permission is checked here, and the user has NTFS write permissions to the FTP directory, then uploads will be allowed.

- Check the maximum permissions that should be available to all users.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.7 Setting permissions on the FTP site.

FTP Site Creation Wizard FTP Site Access Permissions	×
What access permissions do you want to set for the home directory?	Þ
Allow the following	
F Bead	
T Write	
Click Next to complete the wizard.	
< Back. Newt>	Cancel

≻ STEP 6

After clicking NEXT in Step 5, the wizard displays the successful completion screen (Figure 11.8).

• Click **FINISH** to complete and exit the wizard.

The Web Site Creation Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Launch the Web Site Creation Wizard. The wizard will present a welcome screen (Figure 11.9).

• Click Next.

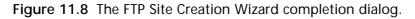




Figure 11.9 The Web Site Creation Wizard welcome screen.



≻ STEP 2

The first data entry screen of the Web Site Creation Wizard is shown in Figure 11.10. This screen is used to provide a description of the new Web site. This description will be displayed in the IIS Manager tool, and used to help identify the site to Administrators.

- Provide an administrative description of the new site in the Description field.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.10 Web Site Description page.

Web Site Dreation Witzard Web Site Description Describe the Web site to help administrators in	dentity it.		×
Type a description of the Web site. <u>D</u> escription: Engineering Web			
	< <u>B</u> ack	Newt >	Cancel

➤ STEP 3

Like other IIS services, unique IP addresses can be assigned to different sites. The IP Address and Port Settings dialog box (Figure 11.11) is used to assign any or all of the IP addresses active on the Windows 2000 server to the newly created Web site. Additionally, a unique port address may be assigned to this site. The Host Header field defines header information that will be sent to client browsers. If Certificate Services are available, the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) may be enabled and a port value assigned.

- Select one or All Unassigned IP addresses in Enter the IP address to use for this Web site.
- Enter a value to use in the TCP port field, or accept the default of 80.
- Enter an optional Host Header string.

- If applicable, provide an SSL port number for Secure Sockets Layer to use.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.11 The IP Address and Port Settings dialog box.

Web Site Creation Wizard	×
IP Address and Port Settings Specify IP address and port settings for the new Web site.	×.
Enter the IP address to use for this Web site:	
(All Unassigned)	
ICP port this web site should use: (Default: 80)	
Host Header for this site: (Default: None)	
Current Engineeering Department Stuff	
551, por this web also also also (D shuft, 443)	
For more information, see the IIS Documentation.	
< Back Next>	Cancel

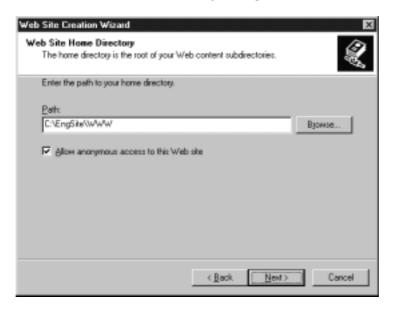
≻ STEP 4

The new Web site needs a root directory from which all other directories will become descendants. This root directory is the physical path to a default folder used when the client browser connects to the site (Figure 11.12).

If users should be allowed to access this site anonymously, be sure to check the "Allow anonymous access to this Web site" check box.

- Check or clear the Allow anonymous access to this Web site box.
- Enter the path to the folder that will be the site's root directory and continue to Step 5, or click **BROWSE** to open the Browse for Folder window (Figure 11.6).
- Click Next.

Figure 11.12 The Web Site Home Directory dialog box.



≻ STEP 5

Setting permissions on the Web site in effect means setting maximum permissions available on the site. If users are authenticated when accessing the site, their permissions on the site will determine what actions they can take while connected to the site, up to but not exceeding the Web Site Access Permissions (Figure 11.13).

The Web Site Access Permissions should be set as follows:

- Read. Allows users to read pages from the site.
- **Run scripts (such as ASP)**. Allows users to receive ASP pages, VBScript, and JavaScript code from the Web site.
- Execute (such as ISAPI applications or CGI). Allows users to execute server-side code created as ISAPI extensions or CGI applications.
- Write. Allows users to write into the Web site.
- **Browse**. Allows users to browse a raw directory listing.

Using these permissions, the dialog box should be completed as follows:

- Set the desired maximum available permissions using the check boxes next to each permission.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.13 Setting access permissions on the new site.

Allow the following	Ţ		
₽ Bead			
🗟 Run garipts (s	uch as ASP)		
Execute (such	as ISAP1 applicatio	ns or CGI)	
🗆 <u>W</u> ite			
E Browse			
Click Next to c	omplete the wiza	ed.	

≻ STEP 6

The last screen of the Web Site Creation Wizard is shown in Figure 11.14. It simply states that the wizard has completed successfully and is ready to exit.

• Click **FINISH** to exit the wizard.

Figure 11.14 The Web Site Creation Wizard completed screen.



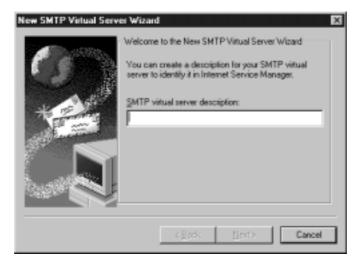
The New SMTP Virtual Server Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Another IIS service that can have virtual identities is the SMTP, or Internet mail server. After launching the wizard, a screen will appear, asking for an administrative description of the virtual server (Figure 11.15).

- Enter a description in the **SMTP virtual server description** field.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.15 New SMTP Virtual Server Wizard welcome screen.



≻ STEP 2

Since a single Windows 2000 server can have multiple IP addresses regardless of the number of network interfaces installed, the SMTP Virtual Server Wizard needs to know what address or addresses should be used for this site. The Select IP Address dialog box is shown in Figure 11.16. This dialog box allows the selection of an address or addresses to use.

- Select an IP address, or All Unassigned addresses.
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 3

The SMTP Virtual Server requires a folder in which to store its data files. The next step (Figure 11.17) allows for either manual entry of a path to this directory, or using BROWSE to select a path.

- Enter the path where the new SMTP Virtual Server should keep its files, or click **BROWSE** to select the path visually.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.16 Select IP Address.

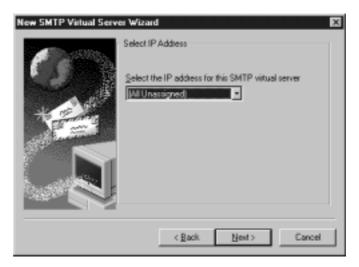
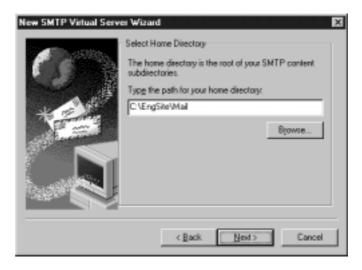


Figure 11.17 The completed SMTP Home Directory dialog box.

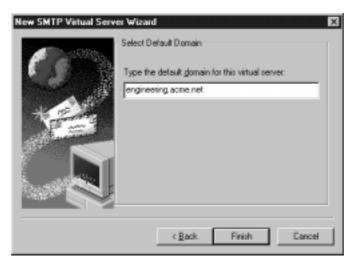


➤ STEP 4

The last step in the SMTP Virtual Server Wizard is to define the domain that this SMTP server will serve (Figure 11.18).

- Enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) that this mail server will service.
- Click **FINISH** to complete the wizard.

Figure 11.18 Entering the domain that will be served by this mail server.



≻ STEP 5

The IIS manager will now show the newly created SMTP virtual server (Figure 11.19). Notice that the administrative description assigned in Step 1 is used to identify the server in the IIS Manager.

The Virtual Directory Creation Wizard (Web and FTP)

≻ STEP 1

One of the nice features of the IIS Web server is the ability to create virtual directories. A virtual directory is a folder containing Web objects (.htm, .html, .jpg, .asp files) that appears to be a descendant of the root directory for the site. In actuality, the physical location of the directory may have nothing to do with the directory hierarchy from the root, and may have a different name on disk than is presented to the client browser. This is a handy way to place directories under the root of the server virtually, without having to change the physical name or location of the folder itself. Figure 11.19 IIS Manager highlighting the completed SMTP virtual server.

Internet Information Services Action yew ⇒ ⇒	Name Name Spomains Current Sessions
×>	

Administrators use the Virtual Directory Creation Wizard (Figure 11.20) to create these virtual directories.

- Click Next.
- ➤ STEP 2

A virtual directory's alias is the name that will appear to users when they navigate your Web site. To the client browser, the alias name of the directory will appear as a descendant of the root directory. The next step is to provide a virtual directory alias (Figure 11.21).

- Enter the directory name as it is to appear to users in the Alias field.
- Click Next.
- ≻ STEP 3

The next step is to associate a path with the alias that was assigned in the previous step using the Web Site Content Directory dialog box (Figure 11.22). The Directory field may be filled in manually, or if BROWSE is clicked, the path may be selected visually.

- Enter the path to the physical directory into the Directory field, or click **BROWSE** to select the path visually.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.20 Starting the Virtual Directory Creation Wizard.



Figure 11.21 Virtual Directory Alias dialog box.

Virtual Directory Creation Wizard	×
Virtual Directory Alias You must give the virtual directory a short no	me, or alias, for quick reference.
Type the alias you want to use to gain acce same naming conventions that you would for	
Alies:	
incomplete	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ewt> Cancel

Figure 11.22 The completed Web Site Content Directory dialog box.



NOTE

It is worth mentioning again here that the alias given to the virtual directory and the physical directory name need not have anything in common. Here, the engineers have a directory called "Projects that are only half-done." This is presented as a virtual directory called "incomplete." This ability to have unrelated names can be both an Administrative convenience, as well as give one the ability to maintain common naming conventions.

≻ STEP 4

Just as with the root directory for a Web site, the new virtual directory can be assigned maximum permissions. As with the root, the actual permissions can be determined by authenticating users when accessing the directory. The permissions assigned here (Figure 11.23) are maximum permissions that will not be exceeded even through the use of greater user permissions.

- Select the desired maximum permissions using the check boxes.
- Click Next.

Figure 11.23 Assigning permissions to the virtual directory.

Virtual Directory Creation Wizard
Access Pennissions What access permissions do you want to set for this virtual directory?
Allow the following
F Bead
Run goipts (such as ASP) Evecute (such as ISAPI applications or CGI)
E Write
F Brgwse
Click Next to complete the wizard.
< <u>B</u> ack. Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 5

The last screen of the Virtual Directory Creation Wizard (Figure 11.24) is to confirm the creation of the virtual directory. Upon successfully completing the wizard, the virtual directory will be created and can be referenced from the Web site.

• Click **FINISH** to create the virtual directory and exit the wizard.

The New Domain Wizard (SMTP Virtual Server)

≻ STEP 1

Like virtual Web servers, there may be a need to create virtual SMTP servers. Virtual SMTP servers are used in one of two ways:

- A virtual server may represent a remote mail server. That is, the virtual server sends mail on behalf of another domain.
- A virtual server may be an alias for an existing server. This might be the case if a company was renamed and needed to maintain SMTP services for both domains

Figure 11.24 The Virtual Directory Creation Wizard completion screen.



NOTE

In the following example, a virtual SMTP server will be created for a remote SMTP domain. The process for either an alias or a remote virtual SMTP server is the same.

Launch the New SMTP Domain Wizard from the IIS Manager (Figure 11.25).

- Highlight the Domains object.
- Use the right mouse button to display the pop-up menu.
- Select New, SMTP Domain.

≻ STEP 2

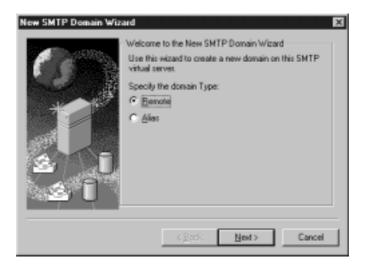
From the opening screen of the New SMTP Domain Wizard (Figure 11.26), the virtual server type is selected.

- Specify either Remote or Alias virtual server.
- Click Next.

EInternet Information Services - 🗆 🗡 Action View ⇔ → 🗈 🖬 🕃 🗒 Tree Domain Name Type 🗞 engineering... Local.. Internet Information Services 🗐 📕 ' engineering Default FTP Site Engineering Files (Stopped) 🗄 🧑 Default Web Site 🗈 🌏 Administration Web Site 🗄 🤣 Engineering Web B- Projects 🗋 Becks Stimpy Twinkies 🗄 🍥 Default SMTP Virtual Server Engineering Mail Server Domains Current Sessions ы

Figure 11.25 Launching the IIS new SMTP domain wizard.

Figure 11.26 Specifying the type of SMTP domain.



≻ STEP 3

The only other parameter the wizard needs is the name of the virtual domain. This is specified in the Select Domain Name dialog box (Figure 11.27).

- Enter the name of the virtual domain in the Name field.
- Click **FINISH** to create the virtual SMTP domain and exit the wizard.

Figure 11.27 Select a domain name for the virtual server.

New SMTP Domain Wiz	ard 🛛
	Select Domain Name What is the address space of mail that is to be delivered by this domain? (For example ".net, microsoft.com) Name: projects engineeing.acme.com
	< Back Finish Cancel

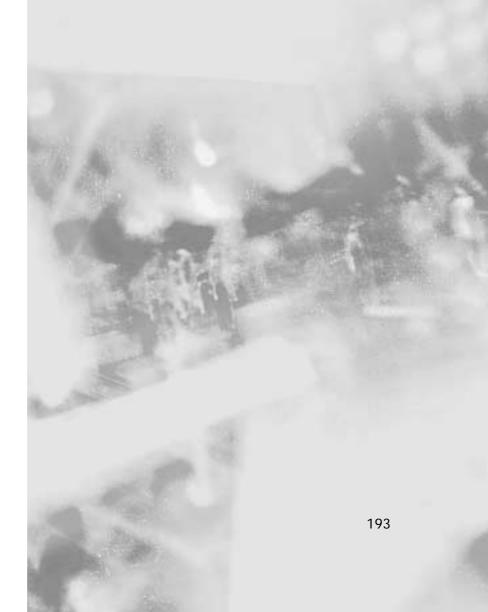
Summary

Microsoft's IIS server is a multiprotocol Internet services server. The wizards provided with Windows 2000 go a long way toward reducing the tedious configuration process of setting up these services.

The FTP Server service can be configured to respond to any installed IP address, on any port, and can be given defined, maximum rights. The Web Server service also allows selection of IP address and port, and includes provisions for security through both maximum rights assignment and SSL. Virtual directories may be created to allow the abstraction of the relationship between descendant directories and their physical location. The SMTP Server service allows the creation of SMTP mail servers that respond to different IP addresses for different domains. Using virtual SMTP domains, one can create alias SMTP domain names, or allow a Windows 2000 server to act on behalf of other, remote domains.

Chapter 12

Windows Component Wizard



Introduction

Depending on your needs, you may decide to install additional Windows 2000 system components, or remove some of those installed by default. To change the components installed, Windows 2000 provides the Windows Component Wizard. From here, you can select which components to add or remove. By the end of this chapter, you will know how to change the operating system components currently installed.

Before You Begin

Before you get started, it is a good idea to understand what component you are installing and why. The Windows Components Wizard is available in both Windows 2000 Professional and Server, although some services or components are only available on one platform or the other (Table 12.1). For example, Certificate Services or the Cluster Service cannot be installed on Windows 2000 Professional. These services are specialty services that should run on the Windows 2000 Server platform.

Some services are going to place more load on a machine than others. For example, Terminal Services will require at least a Quad-processor Pentium Pro running at 200 MHz with 500MB of RAM to support approximately 30 heavy users of this service. Is the machine in question up to such a task? Other components, such as the Script Debugger, require very little disk space and only minimal system resources when running.

Some components are dependent on each other. A good example of this is Terminal Services. It makes little sense to install Terminal Services Licensing if Terminal Services is not installed.

Name	Description	Server	Professional
Accessories and Utilities	Accessibility options, Wallpaper, Mouse Pointers, HyperTerminal, Games, Media Player, etc.	Х	
Certificate Services	Makes the server a CA for use with Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) serv- ices	Х	
Cluster Service	Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) for highly available applications	Х	
Indexing Service	Fast location of files	Х	Х

 Table 12.1
 Overview of the Components Available in Windows 2000 Server and

 Professional
 Professional

Continued

Name	Description	Server	Professional
Internet Information Services (IIS)	Web and FTP server	Х	Х
Monitoring and Management Tools	Network Monitor, SNMP, Connection Manager	х	х
Message Queuing Services	For loosely coupled network com- munication services	Х	Х
Networking Services	DNS, DHCP, WINS, and other net- work support services	х	Х
Other File and Print Services	File and Print for Macintosh, Print Services for UNIX	х	Х
Remote Installation Services	Install Windows 2000 Professional on remote boot clients	х	
Remote Storage	Hierarchical Storage Management	Х	
Script Debugger	Helps find errors in scripts	Х	Х
Terminal Services	Terminal Services Server to run Windows applications and manage the server remotely	Х	
Terminal Services Licensing	Create a terminal services licensing server to allocate client licenses	х	
Windows Media Services	Stream media services to clients	Х	

The Purpose of this Wizard

As the name implies, the purpose of this wizard is to enable the user to add and remove Windows 2000 components and subcomponents. The reason there is a wizard to do this is that very complicated relationships exist between some components and services. By having a wizard to assist in the addition and removal of these components and services, the user is shielded from having to understand many of these complex relationships.

An example of this might be the Management and Monitoring Tools components, which we will use as an example in this chapter. The Management and Monitoring Tools include Network Monitor tools. These tools have deep hooks into the processes of Windows 2000 that allow it to communicate on a network. Registering these components and making other tools and processes aware that they have been installed is a potentially detailed undertaking. By incorporating these complex details into a wizard interface, all the user needs to know is that the tool is to be installed—the wizard takes care of the rest!

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

Before installing or removing Windows 2000 components, the following should be understood:

- What components are to be installed or removed.
- What dependencies might exist between components.
- What additional resource load or licensing requirements might result from adding components.
- What impact the addition or removal of the component might have on other users or machines on the network.
- Have the distribution media available, including any service packs that might need to be reapplied.

The Windows Component Wizard

There are two distinct modes involved when using this wizard. The interface is essentially the same, but you would use this same wizard when installing or removing a component. The first example illustrates installing Management and Monitoring Tools. In the second example, we will show how to remove a subcomponent of the Management and Monitoring Tools.

You can start the Windows Component Wizard in a variety of ways. Figure 12.1 illustrates launching the wizard from the Configure Your Server application found in the Administrative Tools program group.

Adding a Component

≻ STEP 1

After starting the Windows Component Wizard, a list of available components is displayed (Figure 12.2). In this example, we are going to install the Management and Monitoring Tools component. This is indicated by selecting the check box next to the component.

- Check the box next to Management and Monitoring Tools.
- Notice the Description text below the main window. This shows a brief explanation of what this component does.
- Total disk space required to install the component and space available on the disk is shown at the bottom of the window
- If there are subcomponents associated with the component,
 DETAILS will be active. This button will be covered in more detail in the *Removing a Component* section later in the chapter.
- Click Next.



Figure 12.1 Launching the Windows Components Wizard.

Figure 12.2 Selecting Windows Components to install.

roo canada a lenore comp	onents of Window	o 2000.	_ [
To add or remove a compone part of the component will be in Details.			
Components:			
Plindexing Service		0.1) MB 🔳
Genet Information S	R Internet Information Services (IIS)		7 MB 🔤
State of the second sec		5.4	4 MB
Est Message Queuing Services		2.0	5 MB
Ren Networking Services		3.0	S MR 🔳
Description: Includes tools fo	r monitoring and in	proving network performance	t.
	6.3 MB		
Total disk space required:		Dé	tails

NOTE

The check boxes at the first level of the Windows Components Wizard shows the current status of the component. It can be in one of three states; cleared, checked, or checked and grayed. If the component's box is cleared, that means it is currently not installed. If it is checked, then that component and any subcomponents (if any) are installed. If it is checked and grayed, then it has been installed, but not all of the subcomponents have been installed.

An example of this can be seen in the default installation of the Internet Information Services (IIS) component. All subcomponents except the NNTP Service and the Visual InterDev RAD Remote Deployment Support subcomponents are installed. This is why the Internet Information Services (IIS) component appears checked and grayed.

➤ STEP 2

After selecting the component to install, the wizard begins the installation process (Figure 12.3). This will most likely involve configuring several other aspects of the system that seem to have no connection to the component you are installing. As the Status bar moves, you may see messages indicating the following:

- Files are being copied.
- COM+ is being configured.
- IIS Services are being stopped or started.
- Any number of other configuration activities.

≻ STEP 3

In some instances, the wizard will require files that are not on the system disk. In these cases, a dialog (Figure 12.4) will appear and request the location of the distribution files. If it asks as it did in this case, follow the instructions by inserting the CD-ROM, and click $O\kappa$.

TIP

Many System Administrators like to either mount the CD on a centrally located machine, or copy the contents of the \i386 directory to a file server. Then, when installing a component or making other system configuration changes, you don't need to go looking for the original CD-ROM. This works great for drivers, application software, or any other files that might be commonly needed when doing system maintenance.

Figure 12.3 The Configuring Components status dialog.

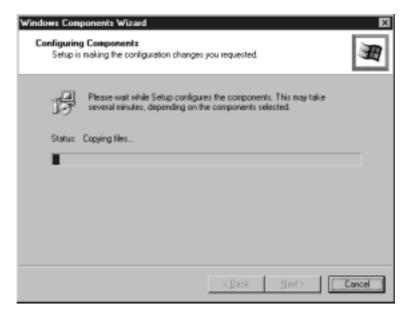
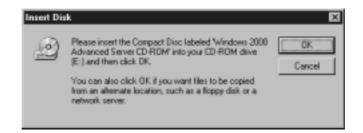


Figure 12.4 The Insert Disk dialog box requesting the Windows 2000 CD.



≻ STEP 4

After providing the wizard with the location of the distribution files, it continues configuring and copying files (Figure 12.5).

➤ STEP 5

The last step is the easiest. If the wizard completed successfully, it will present a dialog as shown in Figure 12.6.

- Observe any messages indicating success or failure of the wizard.
- Click FINISH.

Figure 12.5 Continuing to copy files and configure the system.

Windows Components Wizard	×			
Configuring Components Setup is making the configuration changes you requested.	Ħ			
Please wait while Setup configures the components. This may take several minutes, depending on the components selected.				
Status: Completing configuration of Management and Monitoring Tools				
<且ask 性ext>				

Figure 12.6 Completing the Windows Components Wizard.



Removing a Component

Removing a component follows essentially the same steps as installing one. The only difference is that the component's check box should be unchecked to indicate that it is to be removed.

≻ STEP 1

In the next example, we will remove a subcomponent of the Management and Monitoring Tools called the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). To do this, we start the wizard (Figure 12.7) and select the Management and Monitoring Tools component. Some things to notice here are:

- The Description, Total disk space required, and Space available on disk fields.
- The Management and Monitoring Tools check box is checked.
- DETAILS is active.
- Click **DETAILS** to continue.

Figure 12.7 Preparing to remove a subcomponent of Management and Monitoring Tools.

Windows Components Wizard	×					
Windows Components You can add or remove components of Windows 2000.	Æ					
To add or remove a component, click the checkbox. A shaded box means that only part of the component will be installed. To see what's included in a component, click. Details.						
Components:						
Indexing Service	0.0 MB					
Internet Information Services (IIS)	21.7 MB					
Management and Monitoring Tools	5.4 MB					
Set Message Queuing Services	2.6 MB					
Retworking Services	3.6 MB 🔳					
Description: Includes tools for monitoring and improving network performance.						
Total disk space required: 2.6 MB	Date: 1					
Space available on disk: 1623.9 MB	Details					
< <u>B</u> ack	Next> Cancel					

➤ STEP 2

The wizard presents a list of subcomponents to the Management and Monitoring Tools component (Figure 12.8). In this list, individual subcomponents can be added or removed. Figure 12.8 Management and Monitoring Tools subcomponents.

Management and Monitoring Tools	×
To add or remove a component, click the check box A shaded box a of the component will be installed. To see what's included in a compo	
Subgesponents of Management and Monitoring Tools:	
Connection Manager Components	1.7 MB
🗹 🌉 Network Manitor Taols	2.8 MB
Simple Network Management Photocol	0.9 MB
	el.
Description: Includes agents that monitor the activity in network de- the network console workstation.	vices and report to
Total disk space required 2.6 MB	Detais
Space available on disk: 1623.9 MB	ACCOUNTS OF
OK	Cancel

Notice that the form is the same as in Step 1, including the Total disk space required, Space available on disk, and Description fields. There is also a DETAILS button here to accommodate yet another lower layer of components.

We will tell the wizard to remove the Simple Network Management Protocol subcomponent by clearing its check box.

- Clear the Simple Network Management Protocol check box.
- Click **Ok**.

≻ STEP 3

Next, the wizard returns one level up in the Components list (Figure 12.9). In this case, that returns us to the main Windows Components dialog box. Notice here that the Management and Monitoring Tools component now shows a check box that is checked and grayed. This is consistent with the idea that there are subcomponents below, and not all of them are selected.

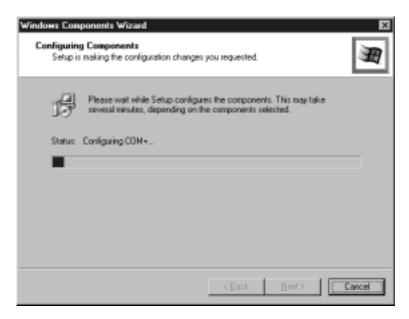
• Click NEXT.

➤ STEP 4

Again, the wizard starts running, removing files, and making configuration changes (Figure 12.10). Figure 12.9 Returning to the main Windows Components dialog box.

Windows Components Wizard	×
Windows Components You can add or remove components of Windo	nno 2000. 🏾 🕅
To add or remove a component, click the che part of the component will be installed. To see Details	
Components:	
Indexing Service	0.0 MB 🛋
Internet Information Services (IIS)	21.7 MB
🖾 🚔 Management and Monitoring Tools	5.4 NB
Est Message Queuing Services	2.6 MB
Retworking Services	3.6 MB 🔳
Description: Includes tools for monitoring and	improving network performance.
Total disk space required 2.6 MB	[]
Space available on disk: 1623.9 MB	Detais
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

Figure 12.10 The Configuring Components dialog box running while removing components.



WARNING

Clicking CANCEL here will stop the copy, remove, or configure process, but could leave the system in an indeterminate state. If you click CANCEL for whatever reason, make sure you go back and rerun the wizard to make sure everything is changed correctly.

≻ STEP 5

Figure 12.11 shows the final dialog box in the Windows Components Wizard. If all has gone according to plan and there were no errors, the removal is complete.

Figure 12.11 Windows Components Wizard finished after removing a component.



Summary

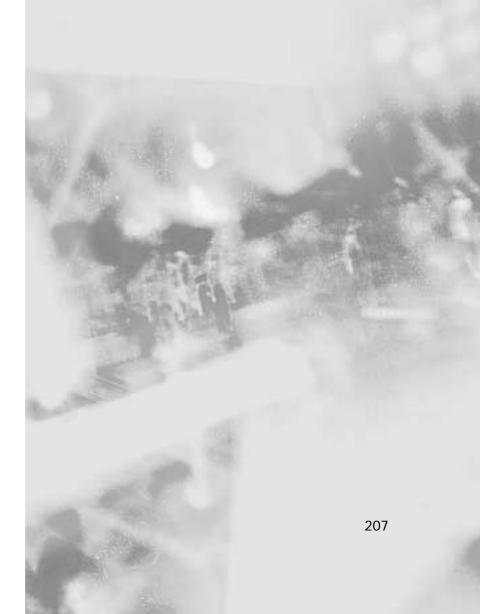
The Windows Components Wizard provides a simple way to add and remove features on a Windows 2000 Server or Professional workstation. The underlying mechanics of component placement, registry updates, and communication with other system services are hidden from the user. Many components are common between the different versions of Windows 2000, although some are only available where it makes sense, on higher-end systems.

Make sure that licensing and resource requirements are met when adding services to a system. Placing a resource-intensive service on an underpowered machine could result in less than desirable performance.

Unless absolutely necessary, do not interrupt the add or remove process once it starts running. If this is unavoidable, run the wizard again. If the last dialog displayed indicates that the Windows Components Wizard completed successfully, then it did. Any other message indicates that the system might not be configured as intended and the wizard should be run again.

Chapter 13

Windows 2000 Resource Kit Setup Wizard



Introduction

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit contains an extensive set of add-on tools designed to make administering and troubleshooting your Windows 2000 system easier. Most Administrators will want to add the Resource Kit to critical servers and those desktops heavily used for managing the network.

Before You Begin

Windows 2000 is a very comprehensive and complicated operating system. Even so, not all contingencies can be designed into a product even as complex as this. The Windows 2000 Resource Kit was developed to meet the occasional (and sometimes frequent) special needs of Windows 2000 Administrators and users. Anyone who has more than a casual involvement with Windows 2000 will find the Resource Kit a must-have tool. The Windows community as a whole will often make the comment "it's in the Resource Kit" when discussing an elegant solution to a nasty problem.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit can be installed in both Windows 2000 Advanced Server and Professional. It includes some tools, however, that will only help server administration. The following are some of the included tools in the Resource Kit:

- **Reg**: Allows registry changes on the local or remote computers via the command line.
- ApiMon: Monitors calls to the Windows API.
- Kill: Terminates processes from the command line.
- **Dumpel**: Exports Event Log to a file for import into analysis tools.
- Several Active Directory utilities
- **DHCP Locator**: Locates DHCP servers on the network.
- Several documents relating to tools and utilities not included in the standard help files.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

The only requirement to install the Windows 2000 Resource Kit is a copy of the Resource Kit distribution files. It might be a good idea to look at the Readme file to get an understanding of the included tools. If only one tool or group of tools is needed, there is no need to install the entire Resource Kit; only the tools needed for a specific task need be loaded.

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit Setup Wizard

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit Setup Wizard facilitated both the installation and removal of the tools in the kit. The following processes demonstrate how to add Resource Kit tools to the system. A separate section describes how to selectively add, delete, or reinstall components from the kit.

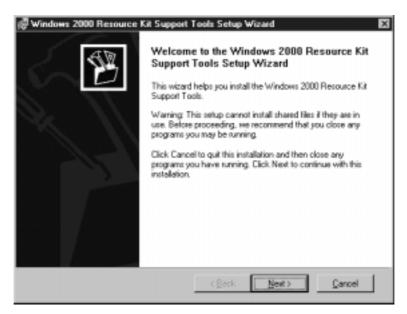
Adding Resource Kit Support Tools

➤ STEP 1

The first step in the process of adding Resource Kit tools to a system is to launch the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard (Figure 13.1).

• Click Next.

Figure 13.1 The Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard startup screen.



≻ STEP 2

The next step is to fill in the User Information dialog box (Figure 13.2). As with most Microsoft applications, the Name and Organization fields take

their defaults from the information provided when Windows 2000 was installed.

- Verify/change Name and Organization information.
- Click Next.

Figure 13.2 User Information dialog box.

Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support T User Information Supply your user information.	iools Setup Wizard 🛛 💌
Enter your name, organization, and prod Ngme: Brian M. Collins Organization: Syngress Media, Inc.	uct ID (lound on the product CD).
	< <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel

≻ STEP 3

The next dialog box lets the Administrator select the type of installation. The radio buttons provide options to install a Typical, Custom, or Complete installation. The Typical installation provides tools and utilities that are most commonly used, Custom launches a dialog box that allows the selection of individual tools or groups of utilities, and Complete installs the entire Resource Kit (Figure 13.3).

- Select **Typical**, **Custom**, or **Complete**.
- Click Next.
- If you selected Typical or Complete, go to Step 4.

If the Custom option was selected, the Custom Installation dialog box is displayed. This dialog box has an expandable tree in the main panel used to selectively mark groups of tools, individual tools, or documentation for install (Figure 13.4). Figure 13.3 Select An Installation Type dialog box.

🖓 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard	×
Select An Installation Type You can choose to install all of the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools, or just a portion.	B
Please select an installation type. Typical installation meets the needs of most users To install all leatures, select Complete. If you want to select which components to install, choose Custom.	
@ Ippica	
C Cyston	
C Egriplete	
Description	
Typical retup installs the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools with the most commonly used options. Recommended for most users.	
<u>≺</u> <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ar	oel

Figure 13.4 The Custom Installation dialog box.

🖉 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools	Setup Wizard
Custon Installation Click the options below to select or deselect indivi- space, or to change the installation location.	dual tools, to check free disk
Windows 2000 Resource Kit Suppo Vorputer Management Grou Deployment Tools Diagnostics Group	Description Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools
Network Management Group Performance Tools Storage Management Group	This feature will be installed on the local hard drive
	This feature requires 0K8 on your hard drive. It has 6 of 6 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 5251K8 on your hard drive.
Current location: C:\Program Files\Plesource KK	Brgwse
Beset	Back Newt> Cancel

By clicking the expand symbol (+), the individual tools that relate to that group are displayed. Clicking the group name or the tool name allows the installation status of an individual tool or group to be changed. In Figure 13.5, the Sysdiff tool in the Deployment tools group has been marked as "Do not install."

Figure 13.5 Setting the Sysdiff tool to not be installed.

🖉 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools	Setup Wizard 🔣
Custon Installation Click the options below to select or deselect indivi- space, or to change the installation location.	dual loois, to check free disk
Windows: 2000 Resource Kit Suppo Windows: 2000 Resource Kit Suppo Computer Management Grou. Deployment Tools V Setup Manager Sidwalker V Syppep V Syppep Diagnostics Group Network Management Group Performance Tools Storage Management Group	Description Syndiff This feature will remain uninstalled This feature requires 0KB on your hard drive.
	Browse Dick Space
Beset	Back Newt> Cancel

≻ STEP 4

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard will ask for verification before modifying the system by installing or removing tools (Figure 13.6).

- Click **NEXT** to continue.
- Click **BACK** to change the installation.
- Click **CANCEL** to abort

➤ STEP 5

As the Resource Kit installation completes, a progress bar is displayed indicating the installation's progress (Figure 13.7). There may be messages displayed detailing copy status, registry updates, and so forth as is appropriate for the tool being installed. Figure 13.6 Confirmation before installing.

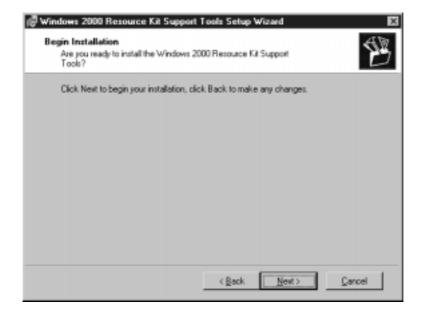
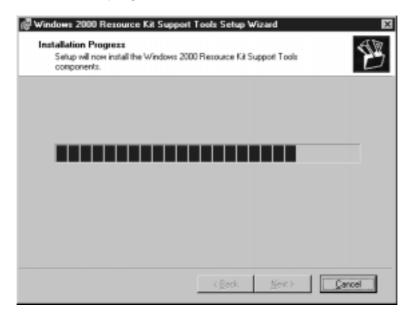


Figure 13.7 Installation progress.

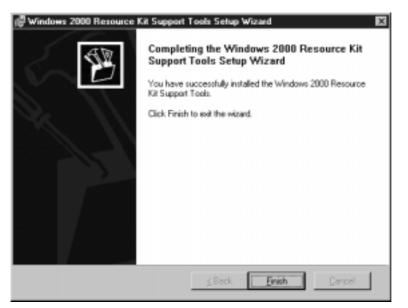


≻ STEP 6

The last task in the installation of the Resource Kit tools is to acknowledge the successful install screen (Figure 13.8). If all went well, the wizard will display the message shown.

• Click FINISH.

Figure 13.8 The Resource Kit installation wizard finish screen.



Removing, Adding, or Reinstalling Resource Kit Support Tools

After the Resource Kit has been installed, the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard may always be run again. When it is run after the initial installation, however, it takes on a different role. When the wizard is run after the initial install, it appears in a maintenance mode. This mode allows the addition, removal, and reinstallation of the various tools that make up the Resource Kit.

≻ STEP 1

Launch the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard. The welcome screen appears (Figure 13.9).

• Click **Next** to continue, or **CANCEL** to abort.

Figure 13.9 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard welcome screen.



≻ STEP 2

The second screen (Figure 13.10) is where the difference between the preinstallation and post-installation behavior of the wizard becomes evident. The options are very different from when the wizard was run the first time. The options presented in this dialog box allow for maintaining the Resource Kit installation rather than performing a fresh install.

The options presented allow the following configuration changes:

- Add/Remove will add or remove individual tools or tool groups.
- **Remove All** will completely delete the Resource Kit from the system.
- **Reinstall** will copy all of the installed tools back onto the system.

For this example, a group of tools will be removed from the system. This may occur if a set of tools was installed for a particular project, test, or operation, and are no longer needed.

- Select Add/Remove.
- Click Next.

Figure 13.10 Setup options displayed when the wizard is run post-install.

Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard	
Select the action you want the Setup Wizard to perform.	P
Click an option and then click Next.	
C Add/Remove	
C Bemove Al	
C Reinstal	
Description Add or Remove selected components of the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools.	
< <u>Rack</u> <u>N</u> ext>	ancel

≻ STEP 3

The Custom installation screen seen previously in the section *Adding Resource Kit Support Tools* is displayed again (Figure 13.11). As was the case earlier, individual tools or tool groups may be flagged to be added or removed. In this case, the Deployment tools will be removed.

- Right-click the **Deployment Tools** group and mark it for removal.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

➤ STEP 4

Again, the Begin Installation message is displayed. The term "Begin Installation" will be used regardless of the operation being performed. In this case, a whole tool group is being removed, but the confirmation box still refers to this as an installation (Figure 13.12).

• Click **NEXT** to continue.

≻ STEP 5

The Installation Progress screen (Figure 13.13) will display various messages describing the operations being performed. When removing a tool or tool group, you will see brief messages stating that files are being removed, as well as other messages such as the one in Figure 13.13. Figure 13.11 Marking the Deployment Tools for removal.

🖉 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools S	Setup Wizard 🛛 🕅
Custon Installation Click the options below to select or deselect indivi- space, or to change the installation location.	dual tools, to check free disk
Windows 2000 Resource Kit Suppo Computer Management Grou Windows 2000 Resource Kit Suppo Computer Management Group Diagnostics Group	Description Deployment Tools
Network Management Group Performance Tool: Storage Management Group	This feature will be completely removed
	This feature requires 0KB on your hard drive. It has 0 of 4 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures free up 681KB on your hard drive.
	Disk Space
Beset	Back Next> Cancel

Figure 13.12 Confirming the operation.

egin Installation Are you ready to install the Windo Tools?	ws 2000 Resource Ki	t Support	\$
Click Next to begin your installation	n, click Back to make	any changes.	
	< Back	Next>	Cancel

➤ STEP 6

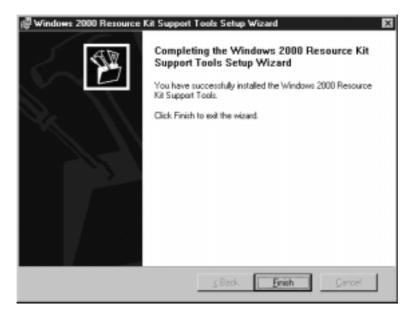
The last step in the Add/Remove operation is validating that the operation was successful and exiting the wizard. The screen shown in

Figure 13.14 states that the operation went as planned and the wizard has removed the tool group.

Figure 13.13 The Installation Progress screen running while removing a tool group.

🖉 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard	×
Installation Progress Setup will now install the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools components.	B
Generating script operations for action:	
< Back Newt >	Çancel

Figure 13.14 The Completing the Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard screen.



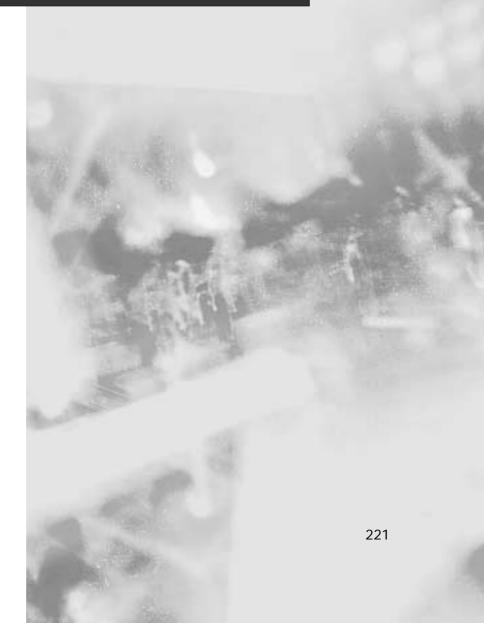
Summary

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit contains a wealth of tools and documentation to support special administrative, troubleshooting, and corner-case solutions that are not included in the Windows 2000 software itself. These include tools to manage networks, deploy software, documentation on Windows 2000 internals, and much more.

The Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard provides a cohesive, uniform method of managing the installation, removal, and modification of the many tools in the Resource Kit. When run the first time, three install options are provided: Typical, Complete, and Custom. The Custom option allows the System Administrator to select individual tools or groups of tools to be installed. When the wizard is run after the initial installation of the Resource Kit, it takes on a maintenance role that allows the addition or removal of some or all of the tools in the Resource Kit, or the freshening of the tools already installed.

Chapter 14

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard



Introduction

Even with Plug and Play support, it may be necessary at times to manually add or remove hardware. Some hardware devices do not support Plug and Play functionality. By the end of this chapter, you will know how to use the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard to add and remove devices from your Windows 2000 system.

Before You Begin

When working with hardware, it is generally a good idea to be aware of Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) procedures. One should never handle circuit boards or other sensitive components without observing proper grounding and handling guidelines. These guidelines should be documented with the hardware device packaging.

Unless otherwise noted, hardware devices should only be inserted or removed from a system when the system is powered off. Some high-availability components are specifically designed to be inserted or removed while the system is running. It should be assumed, however, that this is not the case.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard provides a uniform, complete, and consistent method of adding and removing hardware from a Windows 2000 system. It can also be used to check the status of a hardware device, or to temporarily disable a device.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

Any information pertaining to the hardware device that is going to be added to the system should be included with the device. If it is not, consult the person or organization that provided the hardware device for this information.

If the hardware device supports Plug and Play, it will be mostly self-configuring. If not, hardware value parameters will be needed to complete the installation. Again, these should be provided with the hardware product.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard can be launched from the Control Panel (Figure 14.1).

Elle Edit View Favorites I	ools <u>H</u> elp					鹿
🔆 - Reck. 🔻 🔿 🗶 💽 🔞 Sear	ch 🔁 Folders	CHistory	8 B 🗙 🖻	n 🖽 -		
Address 🖃 Control Panel					•	@Go
Control Panel	Accessibility Options	Add/Remove Hardware	Add/Remove Programs	Administrative Tools	Dote/Time	
Add/Remove Hardware Instala, removes, and troubleshoots hardware Windows Update	Display	<i>Б</i> ак	Folder Options	Ra Fonts	Game Controllers	
Windows 2000 Support	Internet Options	Keyboard	Licensing	Mouse	Network and Dial-up Co	
	Phone and Modem	Power Options	Printers	Regional Dptions	Scanners and Cameras	
	Scheduled Tasks	Sounds and Multimedia	System (

Figure 14.1 Starting the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard.

Adding a Plug and Play Device

➤ STEP 1

After the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard is launched, a welcome screen is displayed (Figure 14.2).

• Click **Next** to continue.

➤ STEP 2

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard has two basic branches. One branch allows the user to add a new device or troubleshoot an existing device. The other branch is used to uninstall a device or unplug a Plug and Play device. The dialog box in Figure 14.3 shows the Choose a Hardware Task screen with the "Add/Troubleshoot a device option" selected.

- Select Add/Troubleshoot a device.
- Click Next.

Figure 14.2 The Add/Remove Hardware welcome screen.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard		
	Welcome to the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard This wised helps you add, remove, unplug, and troubleshoot your hardware.	
	I S SAME AND, SHOP ITTER.	
	Cancel	

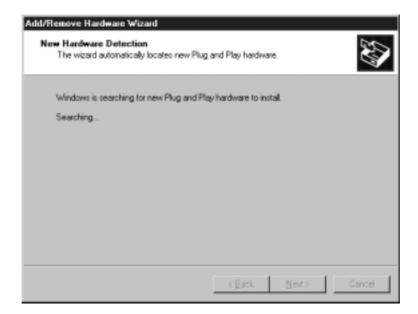
Figure 14.3 Selecting Add/Troubleshoot a device from the Choose a Hardware Task screen.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard		
Choose a Hardware Task Which hardware task do you want to perform?		
Select the hardware task you want to perform, and then click Next.		
Add/Troubleshoot a device Choose this option if you are adding a new device to your computer or are having problems getting a device working.		
Uninstall/Unplug a device Choose this option to uninstal a device or to prepare the computer to unplug a device.		
< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel		

➤ STEP 3

The wizard will search for Plug and Play hardware already installed in the system (Figure 14.4).

Figure 14.4 Detecting devices in the system.



➤ STEP 4

After autodetecting new hardware, the wizard will display a list of previously installed hardware that it has identified (Figure 14.5).

- Select Add a new device.
- Click Next.

➤ STEP 5

It is best to let Windows 2000 search for and detect hardware automatically. This way, the chance of human error is greatly reduced. The option to have Windows 2000 find your new hardware is selected by default. If a previous attempt to identify the new hardware failed, the option to select hardware from a list of supported devices is available from this dialog. To request that Windows 2000 locates new hardware, select **Yes, search for new hardware** in the Find New Hardware dialog box (Figure 14.6).

- Select Yes, search for new hardware.
- Click Next.

Figure 14.5 Choosing a hardware device to work with.

dd/Remove Hardware Witzard Choose a Hardware Device Which hardware device do you want to troubleshoot?	,
The following hardware is already installed on your computer. If you are having problems with one of these devices, select the device, and then click Next. If you are attempting to add a device and it is not shown below, select Add a new device, and then click Next.	
Add a new device	
Maxter 83840 A5 - Creative Sound Blaster 16 Plug and Play (WDM) Charter Dick Controller	
< <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	J

Figure 14.6 The Find New Hardware dialog box.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard		
Find New Hardware Windows can also detect hardware that is not Plug and Play compatible.		
When Windows detects new hardware, it checks the current settings for the device and installs the correct driver.		
Do you want Windows to search for your new hardware?		
Yes, search for new hardware		
Ng. I want to select the hardware from a list		
< <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel		

≻ STEP 6

The Windows 2000 Add/Remove Hardware Wizard will search for Plug and Play hardware, as well as hardware that is not Plug and

Play compatible but is listed in the Hardware Compatibility List (HCL). These hardware components have driver support included with the Windows 2000 package (Figure 14.7). This can take several minutes.

Figure 14.7 Windows 2000 searching for new hardware.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard	
New Hardware Detection Windows is searching for hardware that is	not Plug and Play compatible.
This detection process may take several m	inutes.
Searching for Network adapters	
Total detection progress:	
	Cancel

➤ STEP 7

The wizard has successfully detected a Plug and Play device. In this case, the device that has been found is a monitor (Figure 14.8).

- If the new hardware was found, click NEXT.
- If the new hardware was not found, click BACK and use the No, I want to select the hardware from a list option as outlined in Step 6.

➤ STEP 8

Since the new hardware was Plug and Play compatible, the wizard is finished. Configuration for the hardware, including port addresses, interrupt values, and other settings, is automatic. The last screen of the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard indicates that the hardware has been successfully detected and installed (Figure 14.9).

• Click **FINISH** to complete installation of the new hardware.

Figure 14.8 A new Plug and Play monitor detected.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard
New Hardware Detection The wizard automatically locates new Plug and Play hardware.
Windows has finished searching for Plug and Play hardware.
The following Plug and Play devices were installed. Devices Installed
Plug and Play Monitor
< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel

Figure 14.9 Completing the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard.



Adding a Non–Plug and Play Device

Many older devices do not support the Plug and Play specification. In order to install these devices, parameters specific to the device and its

configuration must be known in advance. The following steps outline installing such a device.

➤ STEP 1

Launch the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard from the Control Panel (Figure 14.10).

• Click Next.

Figure 14.10 The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard welcome screen.



≻ STEP 2

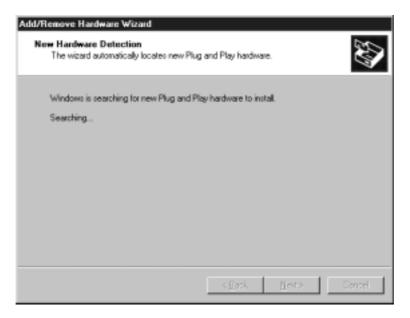
Since the task here is to add a hardware device, select the **Add/Troubleshoot a device** radio button in the Choose a Hardware Task dialog box (Figure 14.11).

- Select the **Add/Troubleshoot a device** option.
- Click Next.
- ➤ STEP 3

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard will search the system for hardware to install (Figure 14.12). Figure 14.11 The Choose a Hardware Task dialog box.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard		
Choose a Hardware Task Which hardware task do you want to perform?		
Select the hardware task you want to perform, and then click Next.		
(*) §dd/Troubleshoot a device Choose this option if you are adding a new device to your computer or are having problems getting a device working.		
Uninstall/Unplug a device Choose this option to uninstal a device or to prepare the computer to unplug a device.		
< <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel		

Figure 14.12 The wizard searching for hardware to install.



≻ STEP 4

Refer next to the Hardware Type dialog box (Figure 14.13). From the list of hardware groups shown in the dialog box, highlight the type of

device that is to be installed. For this example, a 3Com 3C509 ISA Network adapter will be installed.

- Select the type of hardware that is to be installed.
- Click Next.

Figure 14.13 Selecting the type of hardware to be installed.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard	
Hardware Type What type of hardware do you want to install?	Ð
Select the type of hardware you want to install.	
Hardware types:	
DE ATA/ATAPI controleta	-
EEE 1394 Bus host controllers	1.1
Imaging devices	
Intrared devices	
Memory technology driver	_
A Modems	
SE Multi-port serial adapters	
Network adapters	-1
197 Dihar Assiran	-
<back next=""></back>	Cancel

➤ STEP 5

The 3Com EtherLink III ISA card that is being installed in this example is supported by Windows 2000 (Figure 14.14). In this example, the Manufacturers list has 3Com selected, and the Network Adapter list has the new network card selected.

In the event the manufacturer or device was not listed here, HAVE DISK can be clicked. When HAVE DISK is clicked, a dialog box prompting the user for the location of the driver files is displayed.

- Select the manufacturer.
- Select the specific model hardware.
- Click Next.
- To provide a third-party or unlisted driver, click **HAVE DISK**.

Figure 14.14 Selecting the specific hardware to be installed.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard Select Network Adapter Which network adapter do you want to install?
Click the Network Adapter that matches your hardware, then click DK. If you have an installation disk for this component, click Have Disk.
Manufacturers: Network & dapter 3Com 3Com EtherLink III Bux-Master EISA Ethemet Adapter 3Com EtherLink III BISA (30579) Acer 3Com EtherLink III EISA (30579) 3Com EtherLink III EISA (30579) Addron Addron EtherLink III EISA (30579) 3Com EtherLink III EISA (30579) Addron Addron EtherLink III IIISA (30509b) in EISA mode 3Com EtherLink III IIISA (30509b) in EISA mode Aprinet Tom EtherLink III IIISA (30509b) in EISA mode Tom EtherLink III IIISA (30509b) in EISA mode
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

≻ STEP 6

Many legacy devices do not have a means of communicating their parameters back to the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard. This is the case in this example. Many ISA devices that do not support Plug and Play will display this behavior, as will printers, monitors, and other devices that do not support Plug and Play. In these cases, Windows 2000 displays a dialog (Figure 14.15) indicating the device will have to be manually configured. To install these devices, certain parameters will need to be provided by the user. The exact nature and values for these parameters can be located in the documentation that came with the hardware.

• Click Ok.

NOTE

The example that follows shows the parameters needed to install this particular device. Depending on the hardware you are installing, you may see some, all, or more of these particular screens.

Figure 14.15 Dialog box indicating that the user will need to provide device information.



≻ STEP 7

If the device cannot communicate its parameters to the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard, the wizard will ask the user to provide this information. In this example, the I/O Port Range and Interrupt Request (IRQ) values need to be provided so the driver will be properly configured (Figure 14.16). In the dialog box that is shown, the two parameters that this particular device requires for proper configuration are Input/Output Range and Interrupt Request. The dialog box indicates the need for manual configuration of these values by displaying a "?" in the Setting field. To correctly configure any device, these settings must be filled in with valid values. The description that follows describes setting these values for this particular network adapter card and is intended as an example only (See the note following).

- Highlight the first setting that must be changed.
- Click **Change Setting**.
- Repeat this process until there are no more settings indicating a "?" value.

NOTE

The exact contents of this dialog box will vary depending on the hardware being added. For example, a multiport serial card may have different parameter requirements than a modem, which may have different parameter requirements than a SCSI adapter. Windows 2000 knows what parameters are needed to correctly configure the driver, but in the case of non-Plug and Play devices, it cannot know what the valid values might be. Consult your hardware documentation for information regarding these settings. Figure 14.16 Resource parameter dialog box.

Add New Hardware Wiza	nd Properties 🛛 🕄 🔀
Resources	
Unknown Devic	
Resource type	Setting
Input/Dutput Range	
Interrupt Request	?
Setting based on: Basic	configuration 0000
	re automatic settings [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] [] []
Conflicting device list:	
No conflicts.	
	<u>ت</u>
	OK. Cancel

In this example, the Input/Output Range setting has been highlighted, and CHANGE SETTING clicked. This produces a dialog box similar to the one shown in Figure 14.17.

- Select a Value that is supported by the new device.
- If there are other devices already occupying this I/O Range, the Conflict information box will list the devices in conflict.
- Select a Value that shows no conflict with other devices in the Conflict information box as shown in Figure 14.18.
- **Click OK** when done, or **CANCEL** to return to the Properties dialog box.
- Select a value that does not conflict with other devices.
- Click **Ok** to set the value and return to the Hardware Properties dialog.
- Click **CANCEL** to return to the Hardware Properties dialog without setting the value.

Figure 14.17 Setting the Input/Output Range for the device.



Figure 14.18 Conflict information box indicates no I/O range value conflicts.

Edit Input/Output Range 🛛 🕅 🕅
Enter the input/output range you would like to set for this device.
You may either enter a specific range and the nearest valid range will be automatically selected, or you may select a range using the up and down arrows.
This resource is assigned to the following child device(s):
Value: 0340=034F
No devices are conflicting.
OK Cancel

Repeat this process for any other parameters that must be set for this hardware device. In this case, the IRQ value must also be set to properly configure the network adapter. Figure 14.19 shows the dialog displayed while setting this value. Note that the Conflict information box shows no devices are currently using this IRQ value of 12.

- Select a value that does not conflict with other devices.
- **Click OK** to set the value and return to the Hardware Properties dialog.
- Click **CANCEL** to return to the Hardware Properties dialog without setting the value.

Figure 14.19 Setting the Interrupt Request value with no conflicts.

Edit Interrupt Request
Enter the interrupt request you would like to set for this device.
You may either enter a specific value and the nearest valid value will be automatically selected, or you may select a value using the up and down arrows.
This resource is assigned to the following child device(s):
Value:
Conflict information The setting you have chosen does not conflict with any other devices.
No devices are conflicting.
DK. Cancel

≻ STEP 8

After providing all values required by the software driver for the device, Windows will indicate that the driver is ready to be installed (Figure 14.20).

• Click Next.

≻ STEP 9

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard will now copy the correct driver software into the system (Figure 14.21). At this point, the user may be prompted to provide a path to the Windows 2000 distribution files if they are needed by the wizard to complete the software installation.

Figure 14.20 Begin software installation.

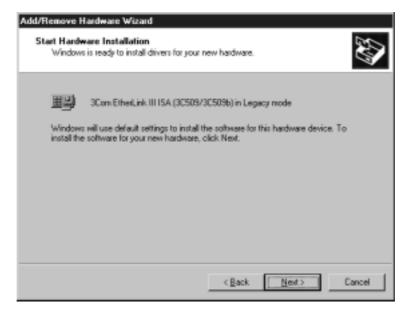


Figure 14.21 The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard installing software drivers.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard Hardware Install Windows is installing drivers for your new h	ardware.	Ð
3Com EtherLink III ISA (3C509/		
	<bask next=""></bask>	Dencel

≻ STEP 10

After the software drivers have been copied into the system, the Completing Add/Remove Hardware Wizard dialog is displayed (Figure 14.22).

- Click **Resources** to review or change hardware parameter settings (Figure 14.23).
- Click **FINISH** to commit changes and exit the wizard.

Figure 14.22 The Completing Add/Remove Hardware Wizard dialog.



Figure 14.23 The Hardware Wizard Properties dialog run from the Finish screen.

Add New Hardware Wizard Properties 🛛 🖬 🖾
Resources
3Con Ethel.ink III ISA (3C509/3C509b) in Legacy mode #2
Besource settings:
Resource type Setting
Imput/Dutput Range 0260 - 026F
Interrupt Request 12
Setting based on: Resid configuration 0000
Use automatic settings Dange Setting.
Conflicting device list:
No conflicts.
OK Cancel

≻ STEP 11

In some cases, the computer must be restarted for the new hardware drivers to be loaded and the hardware activated (Figure 14.24).

- Click **Yes** to restart the computer and load the new driver.
- Click **No** to defer loading the driver until the next reboot.

Figure 14.24 System Setting Change restart dialog.

System S	ettings Change 🛛 🕅
Q	You must restart your computer before the new settings will take effect. Do you want to restart your computer now?
	Yes No

Removing Hardware

In some instances, it may be necessary to remove hardware from the system. The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard can be used for this task as well. Examples of this might be a situation where a hardware device needs to be replaced with one from a different manufacturer, or a device that has failed is to be removed. In this example, the network adapter installed in the previous example will be removed.

➤ STEP 1

Start the Add/Remove Hardware wizard from the Control Panel as shown at the beginning of this chapter. The welcome screen will be displayed (Figure 14.25).

• Click Next.

➤ STEP 2

To remove hardware from the system, the Uninstall/Unplug a device option should be selected from the Choose a Hardware Task dialog box (Figure 14.26).

- Select the **Uninstall/Unplug a device** option.
- Click Next.

Figure 14.25 The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard welcome screen.



Figure 14.26 Uninstall/Unplug a device selected.

Choos	eve Hardware Wizard e a Hardware Task hich hardware task do you want to perform?
Se	lect the hardware task you want to perform, and then click Next.
C	ádd/T toubleshoot a device Choose this option if you are adding a new device to your computer or are having problems getting a device working.
¢	Uninstall/Unplug a device Choose this option to uninstall a device or to prepare the computer to unplug a device.
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

≻ STEP 3

The removal of hardware from a system may be temporary or permanent, depending on the situation. The Choose a Removal Task dialog box (Figure 14.27) allows the user to decide if the device is to be disabled or permanently removed. If the device is removed permanently, the system will free the resources used by the device. If the hardware is only temporarily removed, the system will still consider the resources used by the device as being occupied. In this example, the network adapter installed earlier will be permanently removed.

- Select Uninstall a device to permanently remove it from the system and free the resources that it was using.
- Select **Unplug/Eject a device** to disable the device but keep all the software and settings associated with it.
- Click Next.

Figure 14.27 Choose a Removal Task.

Choose a	Hardware Wizard Removal Task remove a device permanently or tempo	xarily.	Ŵ
	te removal task you want to perform, an ninstall a device hoose this option to permanently uninstr npkg/Eject a device hoose this option to temporarily unplug o	al a device and its d	item
		< Back Ne	st> Cancel

≻ STEP 4

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard will display all the devices currently installed in the system (Figure 14.28). In this example, the network adapter that was installed previously has failed and must be removed. Note the exclamation point icon over the device's entry in the hardware list. This indicates that the device is not functioning properly.

- Select the device to be removed.
- Click NEXT.
- Check the **Show hidden devices** check box to display devices such as subcomponents of other devices.

Figure 14.28 The Installed Devices dialog box.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard Installed Devices on Your Computer The following hardware is installed on your computer.	E.
Select the device you want to uninstall. Devices	
Elevative Sound Blaster 16 Plug and Play (WDM) Standard IDE/ESDI Hard Disk Controller Show hidden devices	N
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

≻ STEP 5

The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard will ask for confirmation before actually performing the removal (Figure 14.29).

- Select Yes, I want to uninstall this device to remove it.
- Select No, I do not want to uninstall this device to cancel the removal.
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 6

The final screen of the Add/Remove Hardware Wizard (Figure 14.30) reports that the hardware has been successfully removed. As was the case in the previous example of installing hardware, Windows 2000 may require a reboot to complete the hardware operation.

Figure 14.29 Are you sure you want to uninstall this device?

dd/Remove H	ardware Wizard			
Uninstall a Confirm t	Device nat you want to uninstall this device	e.		Ð
围到	3Com EthesLink III ISA (3C509/3	(C509b) in Lega	cy mode	
Are you a	ure that you want to uninstall this d	levice?		
C Yes.	want to uninstall this device			
C Ng. I	do not want to uninstall this device	1		
		< Back	Nex>	Cancel

Figure 14.30 The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard finish dialog box.



Summary

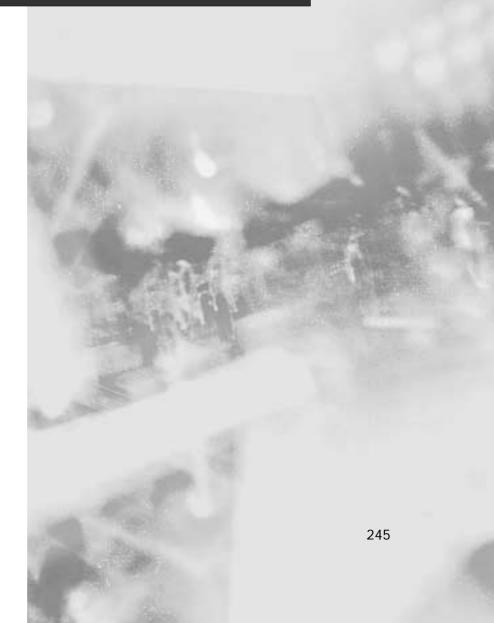
The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard can be used to install new hardware, troubleshoot existing hardware, and remove or temporarily disable hardware in a Windows 2000 system. It follows a logical series of steps that eliminates human error of forgetting to set needed parameters or values.

Always observe common ESD and Electrical Safety guidelines when working on computer hardware systems.

Most newer devices support the Plug and Play standard. These devices will be largely self-configuring. Older legacy devices, however, may require critical user-provided information to function correctly.

Chapter 15

Internet Connection Wizard



Introduction

Before running Internet Explorer for the first time, Windows 2000 will run the Internet Connection Wizard. The purpose of the wizard is to ensure that Internet connectivity is configured, and to gather information for configuring Internet Explorer access to Web and e-mail servers. Most of the wizard will generally be skipped on Windows 2000 Server installations. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to configure a Windows 2000 system to access the Internet, including e-mail access.

Before You Begin

If the Internet connection is to be made via a modem and a dial-up connection, the modem should be installed first. Refer to the Chapter 14, "Add/Remove Hardware Wizard," for information on installing new devices to your Windows 2000 computer. If the modem was already in the machine when Windows 2000 was installed, chances are it was configured then. If a modem has been installed, it will be listed in Control Panel under Phone and Modem Options.

If the Internet connection is to be made via a local area network (LAN), the network interface card (NIC) should already be installed, configured, and working. Ask your Network Administrator if you have any questions regarding your computer's network configuration.

The Purpose of this Wizard

This wizard is available in all versions of Windows 2000. It will most likely be used in Windows 2000 Professional installations. This wizard configures essential Internet configuration information, including connection type, dial-up and ISP parameters, and basic e-mail options.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

If you are connecting via a LAN connection, you should have the following:

 Proxy configuration information from your Network Administrator

If you are connecting via a modem and a dial-up account, you should have the following:

- Your ISP's dial-up telephone number
- Your login account name and password
- ISP-specific information regarding DNS and default gateway configuration
- An IP address if using SLIP

If you will be setting up an Internet mail account, you will need the following:

- Your mail account username and password
- The type (POP3, IMAP, HTTP) and names of your Internet inbound and outbound mail servers

NOTE

If all this information seems overwhelming, don't be concerned. If you are connecting to the Internet through an Internet Service Provider, their setup guide or customer service department will be able to answer all of these questions for you. If you are not using an ISP, but are connecting from within your company or organization, ask your help desk or Network Administrator.

The Internet Connection Wizard

≻ STEP 1

The Internet Connection Wizard is launched automatically the first time you use Internet Explorer, or can be run at any time from the Internet Explorer Properties dialog box Connections tab. When run, the wizard displays a welcome screen (Figure 15.1).

If you do not have an existing account with an ISP and are not connecting using a company network, you might select one of the first two options as offered on the welcome screen. They can be used as follows:

- I want to sign up for a new Internet account. Use this option if you do not have an account with an ISP and want to subscribe to one. The wizard will call a toll-free number and get a list of ISPs offering service in your area.
- I want to transfer my existing Internet account to this computer. The wizard will call a toll-free number, locate ISPs in you area, and assist you in configuring your existing account for this Windows 2000 computer.
- **Tutorial**. Click this button for a brief tutorial on the Internet, Internet mail, the World Wide Web, etc.

For the purposes of this example, we will select the third of the three radio buttons that will manually configure the computer to connect to the Internet.

- Select I want to set up my Internet connection manually, or I want to connect through a local area network (LAN).
- Click NEXT.

Figure 15.1 The Internet Connection Wizard welcome screen.



➤ STEP 2

When establishing an Internet connection, the wizard must know if the computer is to connect through dial-up modem connection, or use the LAN provided by your company or organization. The "Setting up your Internet connection" dialog box (Figure 15.2) is where this question is answered.

If you are connecting via a dial-up connection:

- Select I connect through a phone line and a modem.
- Click **Next**, and proceed to Step 4.

If you are using your company or organization's LAN:

- Select I connect through a local area network (LAN).
- Click **Next**, and proceed to Step 3.

Figure 15.2 Determining the method used to connect to the Internet.

Internet Connection Wizard	×
Setting up your Internet connection	zik
If you have an Internet service provider account, you can use your phone line and a mode to connect to it. If your computer is connected to a local area network (LAN), you can gain access to the Internet over the LAN.	
How do you connect to the internet?	
C I connect through a jocal area network (LAN)	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

➤ STEP 3

Configuring a LAN connection is fairly simple. Since the connection to the Internet will use the existing network configuration information, the only additional configuration required is to specify proxy server information. The specifics of your network's proxy can be obtained from your Network or System Administrator. Fill in the "Local area network Internet configuration" dialog box (Figure 15.3) as follows:

- Select Automatic discovery of proxy server if your proxy server supports it.
- Select Use automatic configuration script if the proxy server is configured to support it. In this case, the Address field must be filled in with information regarding the location of the configuration script.
- Select Manual Proxy Server if the proxy server must be manually configured.
- Select NEXT, and proceed to Step 7.

Figure 15.3 Configuring a LAN connection.

ic Configuration utomatic discovery of proxy server [secommended]
 se automatic configuration script
 ddyere

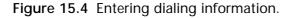
≻ STEP 4

If the computer is to dial up and connect to the Internet via an ISP, the ISP telephone number must be provided in the "Step 1 of 3: Internet account connection information" dialog box (Figure 15.4).

- Complete the Area code and Telephone number fields.
- Select the appropriate **Country/region name and code**.
- Select Use area code and dialing rules. This allows Windows 2000 to intelligently strip off area codes when calling local numbers, dial external access numbers if needed, etc.
- Click **ADVANCED** if advanced connection configuration is needed (optional).
- Click Next.

Optional Advanced Parameters

Clicking ADVANCED will present the Advanced Connection Properties dialog box. This dialog box has two tabs: Connection (Figure 15.5) and Addresses (Figure 15.6). In most cases, it will not be necessary to configure these advanced parameters. In the event it is needed, they can be configured as follows:



Internet Connection Wizard	×
Step 1 of 3: Internet account connection information	ž
Type the phone number you dial to connect to your ISP.	
Àrea code:	
(Mosk ish's do not require dovanced serings.) < 문ack 빈ext >	Cancel

Connection type:

- PPP (Point to Point Protocol). This is the default connection method for dial-up service lines and modems. It automatically configures many other parameters. Optionally, LCP extensions may be disabled.
- **SLIP (Serial Line Internet Protocol)**. This is the predecessor to PPP, and is still in use by some ISPs.
- **C-SLIP (Compressed Serial Line Internet Protocol)**. This is a compressed (faster) version of SLIP.

Logon procedure:

- None. Dial, connect, and do nothing further.
- **Log on manually**. After dialing, the user must enter login information such as username and password.
- Use logon script. If this option is selected, the Script field will become active, and a script to run after connecting must be chosen. These scripts will automate the login process for a variety of server types.

Figure 15.5 Advanced connection properties.

Advanced Connection Properties
Connection Addresses
Connection type
EPP (Point to Point Protocol)
<u>D</u> isable LCP Extensions
C SUP (Serial Line Internet Protocol)
C C-SLIP (Compressed Serial Line Internet Photocol)
Logan procedure
@ None
C Log on menually
C Lise logon script:
Script Browse
OK. Cancel

If advanced address configuration is required, the Address tab (Figure 15.6) may be filled out as follows:

IP address:

- **Internet service provider automatically provides one**. This is the default and should be used unless the ISP has specifically provided an address for this machine.
- Always use the following:. If the ISP has assigned a permanent (static) address for this machine, select this option and fill in the IP Address field.

DNS server address:

- My ISP automatically provides a Domain Name Server (DNS) address. This is the default and should be used unless the ISP has specified that DNS server addresses must be configured on the customer's machine.
- Always use the following: If the ISP requires that the customer machine configure DNS server address information, select this option and fill in the Primary DNS server and Secondary DNS server fields.
- **Click OK** to save changes, or **CANCEL** to return to the wizard.

Figure 15.6	Advanced	address	properties.
-------------	----------	---------	-------------

·	ternet service provider automatically provides one
C A	lyays use the following:
	Address:
DNS a	erver address
ΨM	ly ISP aytomatically provides a Domain Name Server (DNS) addr
-	the second se
CA	ways use the jollowing:
	iman DNS servet.

➤ STEP 5

The ISP most likely has provided a username and password to allow the owner of the account to connect to the ISP's services. This information must be filled in the "Step 2 of 3: Internet account login information" dialog box (Figure 15.7).

- Enter the ISP account username in the User name field.
- Enter the ISP account password in the Password field.
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 6

The last step in configuring the Windows 2000 computer to use a dial-up ISP account is to name and save the account information. "Step 3 of 3: Configuring your computer" (Figure 15.8) is the dialog box where this operation is performed.

- Fill out the Connection name field, or accept the default connection name.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 15.7 Internet account login information

Internet Connection Wizard Step 2 of 3: Internet account logon information	×
Type the user name and password you use to log on to your ISP. Your user name may also be referred to as your Member ID or User ID. If you do not know this information, contact your ISP.	
User name: mylogin	
Earoword	
< Back. Next >	Cancel

Figure 15.8 Providing and saving a connection name.

met Connection Wizard Step 3 of 3: Configuring your computer	× ۲
Information about your Internet account is grouped together as a dial-up connection and labeled with a name you provide.	
Type a name for the dial-up connection. This can be the name of your ISP or any name you want to use.	
Connection to 595-1212	
< Back Next>	Cancel

➤ STEP 7

Regardless of the connection type, the Internet Connection Wizard will ask if an Internet mail account is to be created (Figure 15.9).

- If a mail account is to be set up, select **Yes**.
- If a mail account is not to be set up, select **No**. The wizard will go to Step 12 when NEXT is clicked if this option is selected.
- Click Next.

Figure 15.9 Setting up an Internet mail account.

ternet Connection Wizard Set Up Year Internet Mail Account	×
An Internet mail program is installed on your computer. Internet mail allows you to receive and send e-mail messages.	
To successfully set up your Internet mail account, you must have already signed up for an e-mail account with an internet service provider and obtained important connection information. If you are missing any information the wizard asks you to provide, contact your Internet service provider.	
Do you want to set up an Internet mail account now?	
P Yes	
C Ng	
	1
< Back Next>	Cancel

≻ STEP 8

When mail is sent from this account, the mail message will display a From name and address. The dialog box shown in Figure 15.10 sets the name that will be displayed on the From line of all e-mail sent from this account.

- Enter the name to appear as the sender of all e-mail sent from this account in the Display name field.
- Click Next.

Figure 15.10 Setting the From name.

Internet Connection Wizard		×
Your Name		×
When you send e-mail, j Type your name as you	our name will appear in the From field of the outgoing message. would like it to appear.	
Display name:	John Smith	
	For example: John Smith	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

≻ STEP 9

The next step is to provide the e-mail address that will be listed as the originator of Internet mail sent from this account (Figure 15.11).

- Enter the e-mail address that was provided for this account by the ISP or System Administrator in the E-mail address field.
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 10

Windows 2000 supports POP3, IMAP, and HTTP mail servers. The next screen of the Internet Connection Wizard is where server types and their names are entered (Figure 15.12).

- Select **POP3**, **IMAP**, or **HTTP** as appropriate for the incoming mail server.
- Enter the **Incoming** and **Outgoing mail server** names in their respective fields.
- Click Next.

Internet Connection Wizard		×
Internet E-mail Address		zik zik
Your e-mail address is the	e address other people use to send e-mail messages to you.	
E-mail address	johns@syngress.com	
	For example: someone@microsoft.com	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

Figure 15.12 Internet mail server information.

t Connection Wizard ail Server Names		
My incoming mail gerver is a	PCP3 server.	
(ncoming mail (PDP3, IMAP)	or HTTP) server:	
and and an internet		
pop3.myisp.com		
An SMTP server is the serve	er that is used for your outgoing e-mail.	
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		
An SMTP server is the serve		
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		
An SMTP server is the serve Quigoing real (SMTP) server		Next> Ca

≻ STEP 11

The final screen used to configure Internet mail (Figure 15.13) prompts you to enter an Account name and password.

- Enter the **mail account name** in the Account name field.
- Enter the **password** for this mail account in the Password field.
- If you do not want Windows 2000 to ask for the account password each time a connection is made, check the **Remember** password check box.
- If the ISP supports Secure Password Authentication (SPA), select the Log on using Secure Password Authentication (SPA) check box.
- Click NEXT.

NOTE

Mail account name and password combinations are not always the same as the username and password used to connect the computer to the Internet when using dial-up. Make sure to read any account information provided by your ISP or Network Administrator carefully!

Figure 15.13 Entering mail account information.

nternet Connection Wiza Internet Mail Logon	d	
menet Han Logon		R
Type the account nam	e and password your Internet service provider has given you.	
Account name:	johns	
Pariword	mad	
Eacoword	P Remember paragord	
	rovider requires you to use Secure Password Authentication all account, select the "Log On Using Secure Password work box.	
☐ Log on using Secure	Pacoword Authentication (SPA)	
	< Back Next >	Cancel

➤ STEP 12

The Internet Connection Wizard finish screen (Figure 15.14) lets you specify the action to take after the wizard exits.

- Select To connect to the Internet immediately, select this box and then click Finish upon exiting the wizard. If this option is selected using a dial-up connection, the Dial-up Connection dialog box will be displayed when the wizard is finished. See Step 13.
- Click **FINISH** to exit the wizard.

Figure 15.14 The Internet Connection Wizard finish screen.



≻ STEP 13

If using a dial-up connection to the Internet, and the check box to connect to the Internet immediately was selected (the default) from the Internet Connection Wizard finish screen, the Windows 2000 computer will attempt to use the information provided to connect to the ISP. The Dial-up Connection dialog box (Figure 15.15) will be displayed.

 The Connect to, User name, and Password fields will all contain the information provided when the Internet Connection Wizard was run. There should be no need to change these.

- The Save password check box determines if the password for this connection should be saved for future logins. Clearing this will cause Windows 2000 to request a password each time a connection is made.
- The Connect automatically check box specifies whether the Windows 2000 computer should attempt to dial out automatically each time a network connection is requested.
- Click CONNECT to dial, SETTINGS to change dial-up connection settings, or WORK OFFLINE to not connect and continue.

Figure 15.15 The Dial-up Connection dialog box.

Dial-up Connection			
Select the service you want to connect to, and then enter your user name and password.			
Co <u>n</u> nect to:	Connection to 555-1212 🔹		
<u>U</u> ser name:	mylogin		
<u>P</u> assword:	*****		
	☑ <u>S</u> ave password		
	Connect <u>a</u> utomatically		
<u>C</u> onnect	Se <u>t</u> tings Work <u>O</u> ffline		

Summary

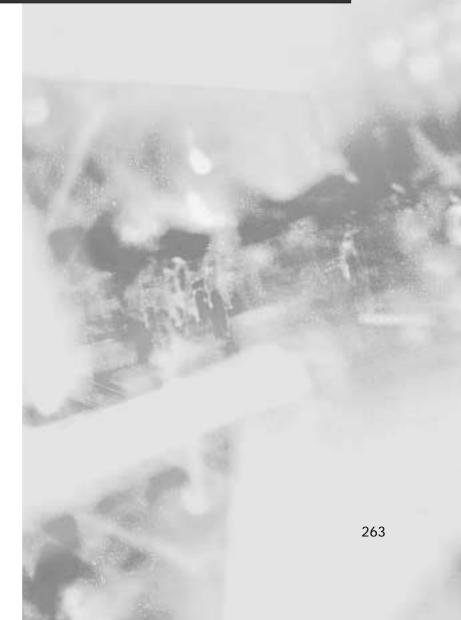
Quite a bit of information is needed to successfully make a connection to the Internet. The Internet Connection Wizard makes setting all this up very easy. Make sure to have all the required information at hand before starting. This makes the whole process much more pleasant than having to look parameters up while trying to get the connection going. Your ISP or Network Administrator should have all the information needed and be able to help. Connecting via a local area network (LAN) is straightforward and only requires proxy configuration information, which in many cases is fully or partially automatic. Establishing a dial-up connection is a bit more involved, and much more flexible. In many cases, using many of the default values provided by Windows 2000 should provide a working connection. The Advanced Connection and Advanced Addressing tabs are available for more obscure configurations.

Establishing an Internet mail account requires information regarding the names and types of mail servers, as well as account name and password information. Again, these can be obtained from the ISP or Network Administrator.

Once completed, the connection can be configured to connect automatically or manually, and remember passwords or require them at each logon.

Chapter 16

Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard



Introduction

Windows 2000 allows you to customize the connection manager for users of your remote access services. The Connection Manager kit allows you to create a profile with support information that is used for a predefined set of either dial-up or VPN connections. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to configure a profile for your remote users.

Before You Begin

The Connection Manager Administration Kit (CMAK) must be installed as an optional component to Windows 2000 Server. Use the Control Panel, Install Software to install this component. It is listed under Management and Monitoring Tools.

There are many options available in this highly configurable tool. It is recommended that the Administrator read the help files that are included with Windows 2000 about this topic to fully understand the implications of the options available.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The CMAK Wizard is used to create executable packages called *service profiles*. These service profiles define many of the options needed to allow an end user to successfully connect to a remote network service such as RAS. As most Administrators know, users can find setting up remote access difficult and confusing. By using the CMAK Wizard, an Administrator can create predefined connection packages that have been tested and are known to work, rather than asking a user to follow typed connection instructions.

These service profiles are highly customizable, and include icons, graphic images, logos, custom phone books, and other features. As such, the service profiles created by the CMAK Wizard are well suited for use in commercial environments such as ISPs, and other online service providers.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

- Read the online help documentation provided with Windows 2000 and installed as part of the CMAK.
- Complete the Planning Worksheet included in the online help

The Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard

≻ STEP 1

The CMAK Wizard may be launched from the Administration Tools program group. The welcome screen (Figure 16.1) provides a brief description of the wizard.

• Click NEXT.

Figure 16.1 The Connection Manager Administration Kit (CMAK) Wizard welcome screen.



➤ STEP 2

The CMAK Wizard allows for the creation of new service profiles, as well as editing of existing profiles (Figure 16.2).

- Select **Create a new service profile** to create a new profile.
- Select Edit this existing profile to activate the pick list and open a previously saved service profile to edit.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.2 Create a new profile or edit an existing one.

ice profile			
ervice profile:			
	7		
service profile, you (can save it unde	a different serv	ice name
	ice profile ervice profile: service profile, you i	ervice profile:	ervice profile:

≻ STEP 3

When creating a new connection service profile (Figure 16.3), the wizard requires both a service name and filename for the .EXE file that will be created upon completion of the wizard. The filename is limited to eight characters for compatibility with non-Windows 2000 systems.

- Enter the name of the service in the Service name field.
- Enter a filename of no more than eight characters in the File name field.
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 4

If there are one or more existing profiles that should be combined with this profile to create a more comprehensive service, select them in the Merged Service Profiles dialog (Figure 16.4).

- Use the Existing service profile pick list to select other service profiles to be merged into this new one.
- Click ADD to place selected profiles into the Service profiles to be merged list.

- Highlight profiles in the Service profiles to be merged list, and click DELETE to remove service profiles from the list of those to be merged into this profile.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.3 Entering the new service name and filename.

	ion Manager Administration Kit Wizard /ice and File Names What names do you want to use for your service profile?
	ype the name of your pervice as you want it to appear in the logon dialog box [for
	semple, Microsoft Corporation).
	Aone Engineering Remote Access
	(Maximum of approximately 40 characters)
Ţ	ype a name to be used for your service profile folder and files (for example, MSFT).
	Ele name: AERA
	[Maximum of 8 characters]

≻ STEP 5

One of the inevitable issues when supporting remote users is the need for the user to contact someone for help. The Support Information dialog (Figure 16.5) allows a short support contact message to be entered in the logon screen for the service. Later, in Step 21, there is a provision to attach a standard or custom help file that provides detailed user support information.

- Enter a short support contact note in the **Support information** field.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.4 Combining existing profiles into the new one being created.

Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard	×
Merged Service Profiles Do you want to merge existing service profiles into this one?	
Specily the service profiles that contain the features you want to merge into this service profile.	
To merge a service profile, select an existing service profile and then click Add.	
Egisting service profile:	
I <u>A</u> dd	
Service profiles to be merged:	
	-
< <u>R</u> ack. <u>N</u> ext> Cancel Help	

Figure 16.5 Creating the support information message.

Type the text you went to appear (for example, Call 1-800-xxxxxxx for customer ternice). Support information: For assistance, call Engineering IT HelpDesk (Maximum of approximately 50 characters)
For assistance, call Engineering IT HelpDesk

≻ STEP 6

The CMAK uses the concept of *realm names* to allow the formation of fully qualified user names. By specifying a prefix or suffix in the Realm name dialog box (Figure 16.6), the Administrator can force the modification of the login name provided by the user without requiring the user to know or understand his or her fully qualified name. This makes using the profile easier for the user, and reduces error and support calls resulting from any additional information required from the user other than a simple login name.

- Select **Do not add a realm name** if this option is not desired.
- Select Add a realm name to force a prefix or suffix to be added to the user-provided login name.
- Select either **Prefix** or **Suffix** as appropriate.
- Enter the text to be applied to the user login name.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.6 Entering realm information.

Realm Name Does your service require a realm name?	
Specify a realm name if your service requires it and you do not want your users to enter it monually.	
C Do not add a realm name	
G Add a realm name	
C Brefix (for example, Microsoft/)	
Suffix (for example, @Microsoft.com)	
Bealm name:	
Gengineering.acme.com	
(Including separator character)	
< Back Newt> Cancel He	6
- East Ten , Canon Inc	*

➤ STEP 7

Phone number entries are added to the service profile, allowing the end user of the profile to dial one or more specific numbers to connect to the service. The Dial-Up Networking Entries dialog box (Figure 16.7) provides the means to include these phone book entries in the service profile. Each dial-up entry may also include optional connection parameters such as DNS and WINS servers or connection scripts (Figure 16.8).

- Click ADD to add a phone-book entry to the list of phone-book entries to be included in the service profile (Figure 16.8).
- Highlight an entry, and use **EDIT** and **DELETE** to modify or remove an entry from the list.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.7 Managing dial-up entries packaged with the service profile.

and the Point of	N	- he see stated a	Marilana arakar	- i- ii
	Networking entries to ial-Up Networking en ne book.			
one-book DiaHU;	p Networking entries:			
Add .	Edt. D	viete		

≻ STEP 8

Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) allow a secure connection to be created across an otherwise unsecured network such as the Internet. The VPN Support dialog box (Figure 16.9) allows the Administrator to request the creation of such a link for either the service profile being created, and/or the services that were combined during the Merge step.

• To create a VPN connection for the Service Profile being created, check the **This service profile** check box.

Figure 16.8 Customizing server and script information associated with a phonebook entry.

Allow the server to assign add	besses	
Agsign these addresses		
Primery DNS address:		
Segondary DNS address		
Printy WINS address:		
Secondary <u>W</u> INS address:		1
Up Networking script:		

- To create a VPN connection for merged service profiles (if any), check the **Merged service profiles** check box.
- Click NEXT.
- If no VPN connections are to be created, skip to Step 10.

Figure 16.9 Requesting the creation of VPN connections.

offie e profiles
e profiles

> STEP 9 (OPTIONAL)

If a VPN connection is to be made, the address or name of the peer must be specified in the VPN Connection dialog box (Figure 16.10). This peer is the other end of the secure connection. The VPN Connection dialog box additionally allows for the assignment of DNS and WINS server information upon creation of the VPN.

- Specify the server address or resolvable name in the Server address field.
- Select either Allow the server to assign an address or Assign these addresses, depending on the origin of DNS and WINS server addressing.
- Click Use the same user name and password for a VPN connection as for a dial-up connection if the user is not to be challenged for a VPN username and password.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.10 Configuring a VPN connection.

Server address:	192.168.2.101	
Alge the server to assign an	address	
C Assign these addresses		
Primary DNS address:		
Segondary DNS address:		
Primag WINS address:		
Secondary <u>W</u> INS address:		
Use the same user name and for a dial-up connection.	password for a VPN connection as	

≻ STEP 10

The creator of the service profile may specify actions to be taken at various times during the lifetime of the connection in the Connect Actions dialog (Figure 16.11).

- Check **Run pre-connect actions (before connecting)** to run a program or script before the connection is attempted (see Step 11).
- Check Run pre-tunnel actions (before establishing a VPN connection) to execute a program or script after the connection is made, but prior to establishing the secure VPN link (see Step 12).
- Check Run post-connect actions (after establishing a VPN connection) to specify a program or script to run after connecting (see Step 13).
- Check **Run disconnect actions (before disconnecting)** to specify a program or script to run before the connection is terminated when the user disconnects (see Step 14).
- Click NEXT.
- If none of these optional actions are needed, skip to Step 15.

Figure 16.11 Specifying actions to take at various stages of the connection.

Sp	ecity when in the connection process you want connect actions to run.
₽	Run pre-gannect actions (before connecting)
P	Run pre-tynnel actions (before establishing a VPN connection)
R	Run gost-connect actions (after establishing a VPN connection)
P	Run gisconnect actions (before disconnecting)

➤ STEP 11 (OPTIONAL)

The Pre-Connect Actions dialog box (Figure 16.12) allows one or more scripts or programs to be run before the connection attempt is made. This might include resetting the connection device, performing predial operations, and so forth. Once programs or scripts are added via the Add/Edit Connect Actions dialog box (Figure 16.13), they may be positioned to run in a specific order by clicking Move UP and Move Down.

Figure 16.12 Managing the Pre-Connect Actions list.

5			
Pre-gonnect action		ter users click the Connect button.	
		Move Up	
		Mpvs Down	
jed.	Edt Delete	2	

• Click **ADD** to add programs or scripts to the list (Figure 6.13).

The Add/Edit Connect Actions dialog box is used to create or modify the behavior of programs and scripts in all pre- and post-connection actions.

- Enter a description of the action in the **Description** field.
- Enter the path and name of the program or script to run in the **Program to run** dialog box.
- Enter any parameters needed to execute the program in the **Parameters** dialog box.
- Select **Dial-up connection only** if the program or script is to run only when a dial-up connection is used.
- Select **Direct connection only** if the program or script is to run only if the connection is made directly (not dial-up).
- Select Both dial-up and direct connections if the program or script is to be run regardless of the connection method.

• Check **Include this program in this service profile** if the program or script should be packaged with the .EXE file that is created when the wizard is completed.

After adding the entries, you can manipulate their settings or run order.

- To edit, delete, or change the execution order of an entry, highlight the entry and:
 - Click **EDIT** to edit programs or scripts in the list.
 - Click **Delete** to remove a program or script from the list.
 - Click **Move UP** or **Move Down** to change the execution order of the programs or scripts.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.13 Adding or editing a connect action.

Denne la con	
Program to surc	Browse
Pgrameters:	
-	
Run this program for	
C Dial-gp connection only	
C Direct connection only	
← Both dial-up and direct connections	

➤ STEP 12 (OPTIONAL)

The Pre-Tunnel Actions dialog box (Figure 16.14) specifies programs or scripts that should be run after the connection is made, but prior to the secure VPN tunnel being established. This might include scripts to gather user information for authentication purposes, special handshaking, or initialization of third-party security software.

• Click **ADD** to add programs or scripts to the list.

- To edit, delete, or change the execution order of an entry, highlight the entry and:
 - Click **EDIT** to edit programs or scripts in the list.
 - Click **Delete** to remove a program or script from the list.
 - Click **Move Up** or **Move Down** to change the execution order of the programs or scripts.
- For detailed information on the Adding/Editing Connect Actions dialog box presented when selecting either ADD or EDIT, see Step 11 and Figure 16.13.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.14 Configuring programs and scripts to execute after connection, but prior to establishing the VPN tunnel.

Specify the prog establishing a tu	rams to be run after establishing ninel for the VPN connection.	a physical connection, but before
Bre-tunnel action		MaweUp
		MgveDown
Add	Edt Delete	

➤ STEP 13 (OPTIONAL)

Post-connection programs and scripts can be configured in the Post-Connect Actions dialog box (Figure 16.15). These programs and scripts are run as soon as the connection to the service is established. The CMAK Wizard provides options for common actions such as downloading new phone-book entries or updates, and using the Microsoft Commercial Internet System subscriber information.

- Check Automatically download phone-book updates to automatically update service profile phone-book entries upon connecting.
- Check Use MCIS Membership subscribers' existing information to obtain account information from the Microsoft Commercial Internet System upon connecting.
- Click ADD to add programs or scripts to the list of Other postconnect actions.
- To edit, delete, or change the execution order of an entry, highlight the entry and:
 - 1. Click **EDIT** to edit programs or scripts in the list.
 - 2. Click **Delete** to remove a program or script from the list.
 - 3. Click **Move Up** or **Move Down** to change the execution order of the programs or scripts.
- For detailed information on the Adding/Editing Connect Actions dialog box presented when selecting either ADD or EDIT, see Step 11 and Figure 16.13.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.15 Managing post-connection activities.

st-Connect Acti Do you want any proj	ions grams to run immediately after users are connected to your
SEVICE?	
Standard post-conner	ct actions:
	download phone-book updates is option, you must specify the phone-book information later in th
Use MCIS Mer	mbership subscribers' existing logon information.
Other post-connect a	clions
	Move Up
	Move Down
Add.	Edt Delete
	These These
200	
<u>1</u> 00.	

➤ STEP 14 (OPTIONAL)

Programs or scripts may be scheduled for execution when a user disconnects from the service by using the Disconnect Actions dialog box (Figure 16.16). These programs or scripts will be run when the user disconnects, but prior to the connection being terminated. Scripts that store information regarding connection details or other data regarding state information that should be persistent between connections are excellent candidates for this option.

- Click **ADD** to add programs or scripts to the list.
- To edit, delete, or change the execution order of an entry, highlight the entry and:
 - 1. Click **EDIT** to edit programs or scripts in the list.
 - 2. Click **Delete** to remove a program or script from the list.
 - 3. Click **Move UP** or **Move Down** to change the execution order of the programs or scripts.
- For detailed information on the Adding/Editing Connect Actions dialog box presented when selecting either ADD or EDIT, see Step 11 and Figure 16.13.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.16 Configuring actions to take upon disconnection from the service.

Specify the pro	grams to be run in	mediately befor	e the connection en	±1.	
Disconnect act	ions:		MoveUp	1	
			Mpvs: Down	ī	
Add	<u>E</u> dR	Defete			

➤ STEP 15

The CMAK Wizard allows the Administrator to schedule applications to run while the connection is active. These programs might include a specific mail client, customized Web browser, or custom application such as the client portion of a client/server system. To specify such an application or script, use the Auto-Applications dialog box (Figure 16.17).

- Click **ADD** to add programs or scripts to the list.
- To edit, delete, or change the execution order of an entry, highlight the entry and:
 - 1. Click **EDIT** to edit programs or scripts in the list.
 - 2. Click **Delete** to remove a program or script from the list.
 - 3. Click **Move UP** or **Move Down** to change the execution order of the programs or scripts.
- For detailed information on the Adding/Editing Connect Actions dialog box presented when selecting either ADD or EDIT, see Step 11 and Figure 16.13.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.17 The Auto-Applications management dialog.

Specify the program	ns you want to run (for e	xample, your e-mail client).	
Auto-applications:		Move Up	
		Mpve:Down	
Add	Edt	de	

➤ STEP 16

To further customize the appearance of the service profile, the CMAK allows the Administrator to use custom bitmap images and logos as part of the service profile. The logon graphic image can be specified in the Logon Bitmap dialog box (Figure 16.18).

- If no custom bitmap is desired, select **Use the default bitmap**.
- If a custom image is to be used, select Use this bitmap (330x141 pixels) and provide the path and filename of the image in the field below.
- Note that the image, custom or standard, will be displayed in the Graphic window.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.18 Specifying a custom or standard logon screen image.

nnection Manager Administration Kit Wizard	
Logon Bitmap What graphic do you want to display in the logon dialog box?	
Specily the bitmap [.bmp] file you want to use for the logon dalog box.	
Uge the default bitmap	
C Use this bitmap (330x141 pixels):	
Browse.	
Graphic:	
< <u>B</u> ack. <u>N</u> ext> Cancel Help	

➤ STEP 17

The CMAK allows a custom or standard image to be displayed in the phone book that was delivered as part of the service profile. This image is selected in the Phone Book Bitmap dialog box (Figure 16.19).

• If no custom bitmap is desired, select **Use the default bitmap**.

- If a custom image is to be used, select Use this bitmap (114x304 pixels) and provide the path and filename of the image in the field below.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.19 Selecting a Phone Book Bitmap.

Specify the bimap (.bm	p) file you want to use for	Graphic (3/4 Scale
the Phone Book dialog		
C Use this custom bit		
1	Biowa	

≻ STEP 18

A specific phone book may be included in the .EXE file that is created by the CMAK Wizard. If a phone book is included, it must already exist and be populated with the telephone numbers and connection information that is to be delivered to the end user. This phone book is specified in the Phone Book dialog box (Figure 16.20).

- Enter the path and name of an existing phone book (.PBK) file that is to be included in the finished service profile .EXE file in the **Phone-book file** field.
- Enter any text that is to be used to indicate that additional telephone numbers are available in the **More text** field.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.20 Specifying a phone-book file to be included in the .EXE file.

Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard	×
Phone Book Do you want to include a phone book in this service profile?	
If you specily a phone-book (.pbk) file here, you must have a corresponding region (.pbr) file in the same folder.	
Phone-book file:	
sera.pbk. Browse	
Type the ted you want to appear when numbers appear in the More access numbers box. More text:	
Alternate Engineering Remote Access Numbers	
(Maximum of approximately 100 characters)	
< Back. Next > Cancel Help	

➤ STEP 19

Icons may be defined for use in the Connection Manager. These could be company logos, custom icons for different services, and so forth. Specify these icons in the Icons dialog box (Figure 16.21).

- Select Use the default files for all icons if no custom icons are to be used.
- Select **Use these files** to activate the custom icon fields.
- If custom icons are to be used, specify each in the appropriate field (**Program icon**, **Title-bar icon**, and **Status-area icon**). These icons will then be included as part of the final .EXE file that is distributed to end users.
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 20

The Windows 2000 taskbar runs the length of the screen, usually at the bottom of the display. This taskbar will display connection time and other status information when a user is connected to the service. In the Status-Area-Icon Menu screen (Figure 16.22), shortcuts can be defined to programs that should be available to users while they are using the service. These shortcuts will be displayed when the end user right-clicks the connection icon in the taskbar.

- Click **ADD** to add programs or scripts to the list.
- To edit, delete, or change the execution order of an entry, highlight the entry and:
 - 1. Click **EDIT** to edit programs or scripts in the list.
 - 2. Click **Delete** to remove a program or script from the list.
 - 3. Click **Move UP** or **Move Down** to change the order of the programs or scripts.
- Click NEXT.
- Figure 16.21 Specifying custom icons for the Connection Manager.

Specily the	icon (.ico) files yo	u want to use.		
€ Usg the	default files for all	licons		
© <u>U</u> se the	se files:			
	Bragrenn icon (32	5:32 pixels):		
H			Bjowre	
	[]He-baricon (16	w16 pixels):		
鐊			Bigwae	
	Status anaxison	(16e16 pixels)		
- 88			Browner	

➤ STEP 21

A standard Help file may be included as part of the service profile .EXE file, or a standard Help file will be included by default. Indicate which file should be used in the Help File dialog box (Figure 16.23).

- Select **Use the default Help file** to package the default Help file.
- To use a custom Help file, select **Use this custom Help file** and enter the path and filename in the field below.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.22 Adding program shortcuts to the connection icon.

ak you wank upers to	be able to run from the shortcut menu	A.
ds:	MoveUp	
	Mpvs: Down	
di Delet	te.	
	,	Move Up Move Down

Figure 16.23 Defining the Help file to be packaged.

ennet Klon Manager Alfaninistration Help File What Help Ne do you want to prov	
Specily the Help (hip) file to be use © Uge the default Help file © Use this custom Help file:	Вусника
< <u>B</u> a	Cancel Help

➤ STEP 22

For users to successfully use the service profile created by the CMAK, Connection Manager version 1.2 must be installed on their system. If there is any question as to whether or not it is installed, Connection Manager should be packaged as part of the service profile. If there is no question that Connection Manager is installed on the end user's machine, the size of the finished Connection Profile can be greatly reduced by not packaging Connection Manager 1.2 in the profile.

The Connection Manager Software dialog box (Figure 16.24) is used to specify the inclusion of Connection Manager version 1.2 in the package.

- If Connection Manager version 1.2 should be packaged into the final service profile file, check the box next to Include the Connection Manager 1.2 software. If there is no question that the end user machine already has Connection Manager version 1.2, clear the check box.
- Click Next.

Figure 16.24 Including Connection Manager 1.2 in the profile.

Select this optic installed.	in only if your u	sets do not c	urrenity have t	Connection Mana	iger 1.2
P Include the	Connection Ma	anager 1.2 so	Rosare		

➤ STEP 23

In some cases, it may be desirable to include a licensing agreement to be displayed when the Service Package is installed. This may be a traditional licensing agreement, or a corporate-use only statement. The text file containing the agreement is specified in the License Agreement dialog box (Figure 16.25). If no agreement is to be used, the field may be left blank.

- Enter the path and filename of the .TXT file that contains the licensing agreement to be displayed prior to installing the service profile in the **License agreement file** field. Leave this field blank if no notice is desired.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.25 Entering the path and filename of the service profile license agreement.

nnection Manager Administration Kit V	Wizard			
icense Agreement Do you want to provide a license agreement that users must accept before installing?				
Enter the name of the text (, txt) file you r	mant to use.			
License agreement file:	Browse			
< Back	Next > Cancel Help			

➤ STEP 24

Any additional file that should be distributed as part of the service profile package can be listed in the Additional Files dialog box (Figure 16.26). These might include support files, custom scripts, and so forth.

- Click **ADD** to add programs or scripts to the list.
- Highlight an entry, and click **DELETE** to remove a program or script from the list.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 16.26 Including additional files or scripts.

Specify all programs	s and other files th	at your service rec	puires and that you	i have not
specined estewners included here. Additignal files:	n mis webro. Cik	ck Help for Informa	non on types or to	es to De
Add	Delete			

➤ STEP 25

The CMAK Wizard will ask for confirmation prior to building the distribution package. The Ready to Build the Service Profile screen is shown in Figure 16.27. If everything is satisfactory, click **NEXT** to start the package build process (Figure 16.28).

- Click Next.
- ➤ STEP 26

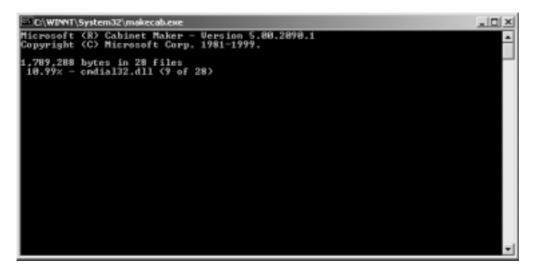
The final step in the process of creating a distributable service profile is to save the profile as a self-extracting executable file that may be given to end users. The name and location of this file is shown in the Figure 16.27 Confirming the start of the build process.

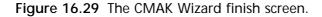
inection Manager Admini		
Ready to Build the S Do you want to build you		
You have successfully of service profile.	impleted the steps to create your custom Connection M	anager
To change any information	in that you entered on previous screens, click Back.	
To create your service p	ofile now, click Next.	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>	Help
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>	Help

Completing the Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard dialog box (Figure 16.29).

• Click **FINISH** to save the executable file and exit the wizard.

Figure 16.28 Command box running the service profile build.







Summary

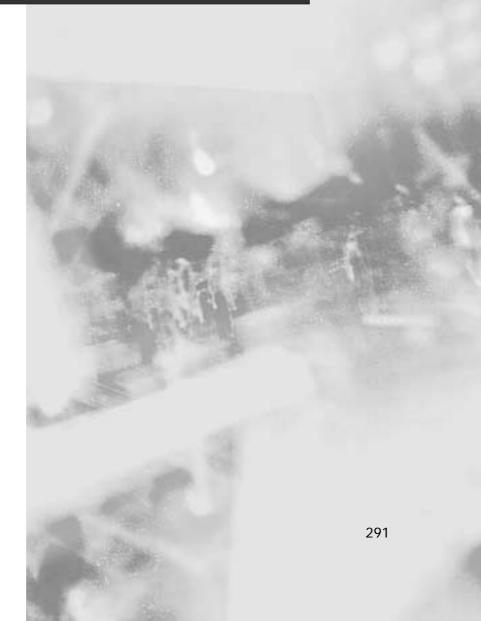
The Connection Manager Administration Kit Wizard (CMAK) is a powerful tool used to create self-extracting and installing service profiles. These service profiles are used to connect end-user machines to remote networks.

The CMAK creates highly customizable packages, such as custom phone books, tailored communication parameters, icons and logos, and Administrator-defined programs and scripts. The high level of customization available makes the CMAK suitable for the creation of commercialgrade connection packages for use by ISPs and other online service providers, as well as corporate or inhouse organizational distribution.

Due to the vast number of options and choices available, it is highly recommended that the Administrator creating a service profile using the CMAK Wizard thoroughly read the online help documentation that is installed as part of the CMAK package. Prior to running the wizard, print and complete the Planning Worksheet for Connection Manager 1.2 available via the help system.

Chapter 17

Create New Dfs Root Wizard



Introduction

The Distributed File System (Dfs) provides a method for enhancing the reliability and scalability of your network file services. Dfs allows you to transparently distribute file services across multiple Windows 2000 servers. Redundant paths to information can be configured in Dfs so that in case of a network or system failure, some users may be able to continue working unaffected. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to add Dfs services to your network and configure your server as a member of the Dfs hierarchy.

Before You Begin

There are two basic types of Dfs roots: a Dfs root can exist on a server, called a *standalone* Dfs root, or it can be an object in the Active Directory. The latter is called a *domain* Dfs root, or a fault-tolerant Dfs root.

A domain Dfs root stores information about itself and its topology in the Active Directory. Because of this, its structure is replicated to several servers, providing a mechanism to withstand a single-server failure. Additionally, a domain Dfs root can have nested child volumes, and they can take advantage of the file replication services that are available via the Active Directory.

A standalone Dfs root resides on a single server; the Dfs root is subject to loss in the event of a single-server failure. The loss of the server on which the Dfs root resides means losing the Dfs file structure until a server recovery can be implemented.

Windows 2000 Professional does not contain the New Dfs Root Wizard; it is a Windows 2000 Server and later feature.

NOTE

Windows 95 computers must install a Dfs support client from the Microsoft Web site, as Windows 95 does not natively recognize Dfs. Windows 98, Windows NT 4.0, and Windows 2000 computers have Dfs support built-in.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The New Dfs Root Wizard gathers the information needed to create the root of a new Dfs file system. The wizard can create either a standalone or a domain Dfs file system, and can either use an existing server share or assist in the creation of a new share on which to create the Dfs root.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

Before you start the New Dfs Root Wizard, you should:

- Understand the difference between a domain Dfs root and a standalone Dfs root
- Know which type of Dfs root you are going to install
- Know the server and path to the folder to be shared
- Decide on a share name
- Understand the security implications of sharing the folder.

Create New Dfs Root Wizard

≻ STEP 1

The New Dfs Root Wizard may be started from inside the Distributed File System manager tool. When run, the welcome screen is displayed (Figure 17.1).

• Click Next.

Figure 17.1 The New Dfs Root Wizard welcome screen.



≻ STEP 2

The second screen of the New Dfs Root Wizard is where the decision to make a domain Dfs Root or a standalone Dfs Root is made (Figure 17.2). Other than providing domain information, there is little difference in the behavior of the wizard based on this information, other than the specification of a domain in which the Dfs root will reside.

- Select Create a domain Dfs root to create a Dfs root that will be supported by Active Directory.
- Select Create a standalone Dfs root to create a Dfs root that does not use Active Directory (skip ahead to Step 5).
- Click Next.

Figure 17.2 Specifying a domain or standalone Dfs root.

New Dfs Root Witzerd X Select the Dfs Root Type You can create a domain or a standalone Dfs root.
Select the type of Dfs root you want to create.
Create a gomain Dfs root Domain Dfs roots use the Active Directory to store the Dfs configuration. They support automatic file replication and DNS naming.
Create a grandatione Dfs root Standatone Dfs roots do not use the Active Directory and do not support automatic file replication.
< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 3

If "create a Domain Dfs root" was selected, the next step is to specify the domain that will contain the Dfs root (Figure 17.3).

- Enter the name of the domain that will contain the Dfs root in the Domain name field (the domain may also be chosen from the list of Trusting domains).
- Click Next.

≻ STEP 4

Once the domain has been identified, the next step of the wizard is to specify the server within the domain that contains the share to be published as a Dfs root (Figure 17.4).

- Enter the server that has the folder to be shared as a Dfs root in the Server name field, or click **BROWSE** to visually locate the server on the network.
- Click Next.

Figure 17.3 Identifying the domain that will contain the Dfs root.

New Dfs Root Wizard			×
Select the Host Domain for the Dfs Roo A domain can host multiple Dfs roots.	ł		Ð
Select the host domain for the Dfs root.			
Domain name:			
domain.com			
Inusting domains:			
Ø domain.com			
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

Figure 17.4 Specifying the server containing the folder to be shared.

New Dfs Root Wizard		×
Specify the Host Server for the Dfs Roo A server can host only one Dfs root.	a	Q
Enter the name of the host server for this D	is root.	
Server name:		
ENGINEERING. domain.com		Browse
	< Back Next	t> Cancel
	. Eac	Cancer

➤ STEP 5

The physical location and share name must be provided next (Figure 17.5). An existing share may be used, or a new share can be created.

- To use an existing share as the new Dfs root, select the share from the **Use an existing share** list.
- To create a new share, specify the physical path in the **Path to** share field, and provide a share name in the Share name field.
- Click NEXT.

Figure 17.5 Specifying the Dfs root share.

New Dfs Root Wizard Specily the Dfs Root Shar You can use an existing sh	
Select an existing share or	create a new one.
C Use an existing share	ctook
Deate a new share	
Path to share:	c:\public
Share name:	public
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 6

Similar to the way that share names can be different from the name of the physical directory they represent, Dfs roots are also named and given comment fields to be displayed to users and Administrators. The Name the Dfs Root screen (Figure 17.6) allows the naming of the Dfs root.

- Enter the name of the Dfs root as it is to appear to the network users in the Dfs root name field.
- Provide an optional comment in the Comment field to further describe the Dfs root.
- Click Next.

Figure 17.6 Naming the Dfs root.

New Dfs Root Wizard Name the Dfs Root You must provide a	unique name for each Dfs root.
Lype a name for the Vudomain.com/y	
Dfs root name: Comment	Public Public folders
	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 7

The creation of the Dfs root is complete. The final screen of the New Dfs Root Wizard (Figure 17.7) summarizes the information that was gathered.

• Click **FINISH** to save the new Dfs root.

Figure 17.7 Summary of information gathered.

New Dfs Root Wizard			×	
(D)	Completing the New Dfs Root Wizard You specified the following settings:			
	Domain: Host server: Root share: Dis soot name: To close this wig	domain.com ENGINEERING.domain.com public public and, click Finish,		
		< <u>R</u> ack Finish Cance		

Summary

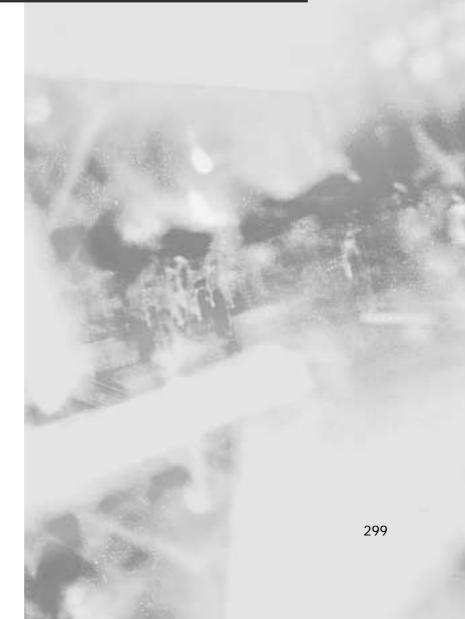
Dfs is a new Windows 2000 feature that allows directory structures to span multiple servers. A domain Dfs replicates information about itself via the Active Directory, and as such, is considered fault-tolerant. A standalone Dfs root exists only on a single server and can be lost if the host server fails.

The New Dfs Root Wizard allows the creation of a new Dfs files system root object, either a standalone or domain Dfs.

Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, and Windows 98 clients can use Dfs natively, but a Dfs client must be downloaded from the Microsoft Web site if Windows 95 clients are to recognize the Dfs file system.

Chapter 18

Delegation of Control Wizard



Introduction

One of the advantages of Active Directory is that everything in the directory database is treated as an independent object. An Administrator can assign rights to each object, including permissions to modify or add new objects to other users on the network. By the end of this chapter, you will know how to delegate administration of Active Directory objects to other computers and users on the network.

Before You Begin

To perform the task of using the Delegation of Control Wizard you need to ensure you use an Administrator's account and ensure Active Directory is in use on your network.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Delegation of Control Wizard is present in Windows 2000 Server when Active Directory is in use. This wizard allows Administrators to very granularly grant specific administrative rights for organizational units, domains, and sites to groups and/or individuals. This reduces the security risk of having too many people with too much power over parts of the Active Directory structure that they do not have a need for.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard To use the Delegation of Control Wizard, you need the following:

- Users, Groups, or Computers you need to delegate control to
- The task(s) you plan to delegate

The Delegation of Control Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Delegation of Control Wizard.

- Open Active Directory Users and Computers from the Administrative Tools menu.
- Right-click the organizational unit for which you want to delegate control (Figure 18.1).
- Select **Delegate Control...** from the pop-up menu.

Figure 18.1 Right-click on the domain you want to delegate control from.

Active Directory Users and Computers				
😸 Çorazle Window Help				_# # ×
Action Yew + → == =	#h741	E.		
Tiee			(DC01.sdc.biloxi.rss.us)	1 objects
Active Directory Users and Computers (SDC01.adc.biloxi.mo.us) bible biloar parts Delegate Control. Find. Connect to Domain Controller Operations Masters. New All Tasks New Window Iron Here Refresh Properties Help	Nome G ^{al} ocic biloxi me uo	Туре	Description	
Delegates control of objects in this folder				

➤ STEP 2

Click **NEXT** at the Delegation of Control Wizard welcome page (Figure 18.2).

➤ STEP 3

Click ADD... on the Users or Groups page (Figure 18.3).

➤ STEP 4

Highlight the user and/or group you want to delegate control to, click ADD (Figure 18.4), and then click $O\kappa$.

➤ STEP 5

Click Next on the Users or Groups page (Figure 18.5).

Figure 18.2 The Delegation of Control Wizard welcome page.



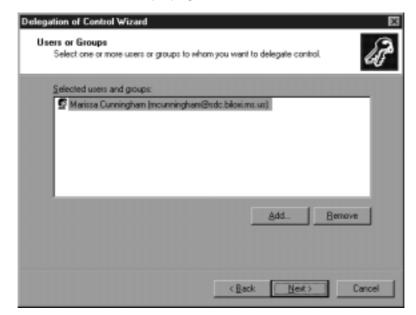
Figure 18.3 The Users or Groups page.



Figure 18.4 Selecting Users, Computers, or Groups to delegate control to.

2 Select Users, Computers, or Groups		2 ×
Look in: 🚳 ede. biosi na us		•
Nane	In Folder	
Marissa Cunningham (mcunningham@sdc.biloxi.	. sdc.biloxi.ms.us/Users	
Domain Computers	sdc. biloxi.mc.uc/Users	
Domain Controllers	odc. biloxí.ma.ua/Users	
😰 Schema Admine	odc. biloxi.ms.us/Users	
Enterprise Admins	sdc. biloxi. ms.us/Users	_
12 Cert Publishers	sdc.biloxi.ms.us/Users	
Domain Admin:	sdc. biloxi.ms.us/Users	
∆66 Check Names		
Marissa Cunningham (mcunningham@sdc.biloxi.ms.u	हो	
	OK	Cancel

Figure 18.5 The Users or Groups page.



≻ STEP 6

Select from one of two types of delegation shown in Figure 18.6.

- **Delegate the following common tasks**. These two items are applied domain-wide. If you select this option, click **NEXT**, and go to Step 9.
 - Join a computer to the domain
 - Manage Group Policy links
- **Create a custom task to delegate**. If you select this option, click **NEXT**, and go to Step 7.

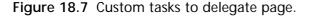
Figure 18.6 Selecting common tasks or custom tasks to delegate.

Delegation of Control Wizard			×
Tasks to Delegate You can select common tasks or customiz	e jour own.		B
Delegate the following common tasks:			
Join a computer to the domain			
Manage Group Policy links			
C greate a ouctom task to delegate			
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ed >	Cancel

≻ STEP 7

Selecting "Create a custom task to delegate" allows you to define the task you want to delegate (Figure 18.7). There are two main choices of delegation on this page:

 This folder, existing objects in this folder, and creation of new objects in this folder. Selecting this choice allows delegation of control for all objects in the organizational unit. Click NEXT to proceed to the next step.



Delegation of Control Wizard	×
Active Directory Object Type Indicate the scope of the task you want to delegate.	63
Delegate control of:	
This folder, existing objects in this folder, and creation of new of	bjects in this folder
O Only the following objects in the folder:	
aCSResourceLinits objects certificationAuthority objects Computer objects Connection objects Contact objects Group objects groupPolicyContainer objects intellinitm/Group objects	*
< Back N	ent> Cancel

• Only the following objects in the folder:

- aCSResourceLimits objects
- Certification Authority objects
- Computer objects
- Connection objects
- Contact objects
- Group objects
- GroupPolicyContainer objects
- intellimirrorGroup objects
- intellimirrorSCP objects
- MSMQ Configuration objects
- Organizational Unit objects
- Printer objects
- Shared Folder objects
- Site objects
- Site Link objects
- Site Link Bridge objects
- Site Settings objects
- Sites Container objects
- Subnet objects

- Subnets Container objects
- Trusted Domain objects
- User objects

This choice allows very granular delegation of only the objects you want to give another user, group, or computer. If you select this option, place a check mark next to the object(s) you want to delegate, and click **Next** to proceed to the next step.

➤ STEP 8

The Permissions page allows you to select the permissions you grant for the object(s) you have delegated (Figure 18.8). The permissions displayed for you to select from are based on which of the following three blocks you select (one or more of the blocks may be selected):

- General
- Property-specific
- Creation/deletion of specific child objects

Figure 18.8 The Permissions page.

Delegation of Control Wizard Permissions Select the permissions you want to delegate.			¤ B
Show these permissions: Show these permissions: Property-specific Creation/deletion of specific child objects Permissions:			
Full Control Read Write Create All Child Objects Delete All Child Objects Read All Properties			1
	< <u>B</u> ack	lied >	Cancel

The number of permissions you can select depends not only on which of these three blocks you decide to choose, but also the object(s) you have decided to delegate. Let's look at an example of the General permissions available when the User objects have been delegated. The following are the General permissions available for User objects:

- Full Control
- Read
- Write
- Create All Child Objects
- Delete All Child Objects
- Read All Properties
- Write All Properties
- Change Password
- Reset Password
- Send As
- Receive As
- Read and Write General Information
- Read and Write Account Restrictions
- Read and Write Logon Information
- Read and Write Group Membership
- Read and Write Personal Information
- Read and Write Phone and Mail Options
- Read and Write Web Information
- Read and Write Public Information
- Read and Write Remote Access Information

While the General permissions may seem to be granular (and they are!), even more permissions are available for the User objects. Selecting General shows a choice of 20 permissions available for selection. Selecting General, Property-specific, and Creation/deletion of specific child objects boosts the number of permissions available to 150! Very granular delegation capability indeed! Click **NEXT** after selecting the permissions you want to delegate.

NOTE

The number of permissions available and the type of permission will vary, depending on the object(s) selected for delegation.

≻ STEP 9

The Completing the Delegation of Control Wizard page will display a summary of what was completed (Figure 18.9). Click **FINISH** to close the Delegation of Control Wizard.

Figure 18.9 Completing the Delegation of Control Wizard.

Delegation of Control Wizard	×
UP	Completing the Delegation of Control Wizard You have successfully completed the Delegation of Control Hizard.
	You chose to delegate control of objects in the following Active Directory folder: sdc.biloxi.ms.us/ The groups, users, or computers to which you have given control are: Marissa Cunningham (mounningham@odc.biloxi.ms.us) You chose to delegate the following tasks:
	<back cancel<="" finish="" th=""></back>

Summary

The Delegation of Control Wizard allows you to granularly control the delegation of users, groups, computers, organizational units, and other objects within Active Directory. No longer do you have to give Administrator privileges to users who do not need all of the power associated with "normal" Administrator rights.

Using the wizard, you can delegate to users, groups, or computers. After selecting whom you will delegate control to, you must decide what permissions you want them to have. You may select common tasks or custom tasks. If you select common tasks, the wizard will make the appropriate changes and the wizard finishes. If you select custom tasks, you have two choices: you may select the entire folder, or you may select one or more objects in the folder to delegate. No matter whether you select the entire folder or only certain objects from the folder, you must also select the permissions you wish to delegate. The Permissions page shows three categories of permissions: General, Property-specific, and Creation/deletion of specific child objects. You select the permissions you wish to delegate from the list shown. The permissions shown will vary based on the choice you picked to be shown and the object(s) you have selected.

Chapter 19

Create Partition Wizard



Introduction

When configuring Windows 2000 for the first time, you were prompted to create and select a partition for the install. Once Windows 2000 is installed, you may want to add additional partitions or drives to an existing configuration. Windows 2000 offers a wizard to make the configuration of partitions easier. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to create new partitions for your Windows 2000 systems.

Before You Begin

Care should be taken using the Create Partition Wizard; data loss can occur from improper use. Administrative access is required to use this wizard.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Create Partition Wizard is used to create partitions, and is available for both Windows 2000 Server and Windows 2000 Professional. It can be used to create NTFS, FAT, and FAT32 partitions.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

To use the Create Partition Wizard, you need the following:

• Free space or unallocated space on a hard drive.

The Create Partition Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Create Partition Wizard.

- Open Computer Management from the Administrative Tools menu.
- Select **Disk Management** from the left pane.
- Right-click on an area of free space or unallocated space of your hard drive (Figure 19.1).
- Select Create Partition... or Create Logical Drive..., depending on the selection available to you from the pop-up menu. You will see Create Partition if the selected free space is not already assigned to an extended partition. The Create Logical Drive option is displayed if the selected free space is in an extended partition.

	Volume	Lapout	1 Jpr	File System	Status	Capacity
Computer Menagement (Local)	9 (c)	Pation	Basic	6AT .	Healty (Syster)	1.00 GB
II K System Tuole	(2) € 1	Pation	E delo	FAT	Healty	STI ME
B IEI Event Viewer	CO FI	FarMon:	Banko	FAT	Healty	STEME
E 9 Susten Information	10 BI	Fation	Basec	FAT	Healty	1.02 GB
19 - A Performance Logs and Alerts	(H)	Patton	diame:		Healty	201 MB
(8) 🙀 Shared Folders	III 11	Parkton	Basic:	FAT	Healty	145 MB
- Device Manager	⇒ µ3	Fattion	R brief	F/AT	Healthy	131 MB
E T Local Users and Groups	😅 (K.)	Fatton	Bankt	FAT	Healthy	478 MB
Storage	@ NI	Fattion	Basic	NTFS	Healthy (Boot)	3 03 GB
Bisk Management (K) Disk Detractivester	(EINTPS (D.)	Patton	Basic	NTES	Healty	478 MB
Logical Drives Removable Storage Services and Applications	SP Diek 0 Sere	.0:1	JE:	(F)	(G) (P	9
🕫 💕 Renezyable Starage		IC:1 1.00 se FAT Healty System	502 MB FAT	502 HB FAT	1.02 BB FAT 3.0	E) 1 GB NTFS Mrg 15 cot
🕫 💕 Renezyable Starage	9 arrs: 6 04 68	1.00 Ga FAT Healty Explored NTES (D: 476 MB NTF	502 MB FAT	Healty Healty	1.02 BB FAT 3.0	1 Da NTFS Ster Boot
🕫 💕 Renezyable Starage	Same 6.04 GB Ordere SP Disk 1 Basic 1.87 GB	1.00 Ga FAT Healty Explored NTES (D: 476 MB NTF	PIL:) PIL: PIL:) PIL:	SC2 MB FAT Healty B F 132 MB F 4 Healty	1 32 GB FAT 332 Healty Healty	1 Da NTFS Ster Boot

Figure 19.1 Right-click on the free space you want to partition.

➤ STEP 2

Click Next at the Create Partition Wizard welcome page (Figure 19.2).

➤ STEP 3

Select the Partition Type you want to create, and click **NEXT** (Figure 19.3). The choices available to you depend on the existing layout of your hard drive. If you have unallocated space, you may be able to select Primary partition or Extended partition. If you chose free space in an extended partition, the only choice available to you is Logical drive (Figure 19.3). Windows 2000 starts from a primary partition and it supports up to four primary partitions on a basic disk. You can also have up to three primary partitions and one extended partition if your needs require that. Only one extended partition is allowed for each basic disk.

Figure 19.2 The Create Partition Wizard welcome page.



Figure 19.3 Selecting the Partition Type you want to create.

Create Partition Wizard Select Partition Type You can specify what type of partition to create.	uu 🛛
Select the type of partition you want to create:	
C Empy parties	
C Extended partition	
Logical dive	
Description	
A logical drive is a volume you create within an extended partition on a basic disk.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

≻ STEP 4

Select the amount of disk space you want the partition to be, and click **NEXT** (Figure 19.4). The maximum size is automatically placed in the dialog box.

Figure 19.4 Selecting the amount of disk space for the new partition.

Create Partition Wilcard Specify Partition Size How big do you want the partition	on to be?
Choose a partition size that is sm	nailer than the maximum dick space.
Maximum disk space:	478 MB
Minimum disk space:	1 MB
Amount of disk space to use:	ENE B
	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 5

Select one of the three assignments for the new partition (Figure 19.5).

- **Assign a drive letter**. Select from the unused drive letters shown in the drop-down box. If you select this option, click **NEXT** and proceed to Step 7.
- Mount this volume at an empty folder that supports drive paths. In Windows 2000, it is now possible to mount a volume to a folder. This is very handy if you are running out of drive letters! In order to use this option, you must be using NTFS. If you select this option, click BROWSE... and go to Step 6.
- Do not assign a drive letter or drive path. Select this option if you want to partition the free/unallocated space, but do not want to assign a drive letter or path. Click NEXT, and go to Step 7.

Figure 19.5 Selecting the drive letter, path, or neither to assign the new partition.

Create Partition Wizard	×
Assign Drive Letter or Path You can assign a drive letter or drive path to a partition.	
Assign a drive letter: L Mount this volume at an empty folder that supports drive paths: Erowne	
C Do not assign a drive letter or drive path	
	rent 1
< Back Next >	Cancel

≻ STEP 6

Select the empty folder to assign to the new partition from one of your NTFS volumes (Figure 19.6). If an empty folder is not available, you may create one by clicking **New Folder**. After making the selection, click **O**K.

Figure 19.6 Selecting the folder in the drive path for the new partition.

Browse for Drive Path	2 🛛
Listed below are volumes which support drive path new drive path, choose an empty folder or click on create a folder.	
N:\Documents and Settings\CDROM	
	New Folder OK Cancel

≻ STEP 7

Select from the format options for the new partition, and click **NEXT** (Figure 19.7).

- **Do not format this partition**. Select this choice if you do not want to format the new partition at this time. Remember that the new partition cannot be used until it is formatted.
- Format this partition with the following settings. Several choices are available for formatting the new partition.
 - **File system to use**. Windows 2000 supports three different file systems:

NTFS FAT32 FAT

Figure 19.7 Selecting the format options for the new partition.

Create Partition Wizard Format Partition You can customize the formatting of the partition.
Specify whether you want to format this partition.
< <u>B</u> ack Next > Cancel

- Allocation unit size. The size for each unit. Leave it set to the default unless you have a very good reason to change it. The following sizes are available for selection:
 - 512 1024 2048 4096

8192 16k 32k 64k

- Volume label. The name you want to give the new partition.
- **Perform a quick format.** Same as using the /q switch with the format command.
- **Enable file and folder compression.** This option is only available if you select to use the NTFS file system.

Table 19.1 illustrates the compatibility of the three different file systems available in Windows 2000 with other operating systems. The table considers only the operating systems as they are shipped by their manufacturer, not any third-party add-on products.

FAT	FAT32	NTFS
OS/2, MS-DOS, Windows 3.x, Windows 9x, Windows NT, and Windows 2000 can access drives formatted with this file system.	Windows 95 OSR2, Windows 98, and Windows 2000 can access drives formatted with this file system.	Windows 2000 is the only operating system that can fully access all the fea- tures available in the ver- sion of NTFS that ships with Windows 2000. Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 4 or higher may be able to access some files as long as they do not take advantage of any of the new features of NTFS.

Table 19.1 Comparison of the Three File Systems and Various Operating Systems

Table 19.2 illustrates the file and disk sizes available with the three different file systems available in Windows 2000.

There are several reasons that you will want/need to consider using the NTFS file system. A mandatory use of NTFS is for all Active Directory domain controllers. You also need to use NTFS if you plan to use file encryption, file level permissions, remote storage, recovery logging of disk activities, and disk quotas.
 Table 19.2
 Comparison of the File and Disk Sizes Available to Windows 2000

 for Each Type of File System

FAT	FAT32	NTFS
Supports volumes ranging in size from floppy disks to 4GB	Supports volumes rang- ing in size from 512MB to 2TB	Cannot be used on floppy disks
Maximum file size is 2GB	Maximum file size is 4GB	Microsoft's recommended minimum volume size is 10MB
Does not support Active Directory domains	Does not support Active Directory domains	Microsoft's recommended maximum file size is 2TB, even though the file sys- tem can support bigger volumes
	FAT32 volumes in Windows 2000 are limit- ed to 32GB	The only limitation on file size is the volume size

➤ STEP 8

The Completing the Create Partition Wizard page will display a summary of the actions completed (Figure 19.8). Click **FINISH** to close the Create Partition Wizard.

Figure 19.8 The Create Partition Wizard completion page.



Summary

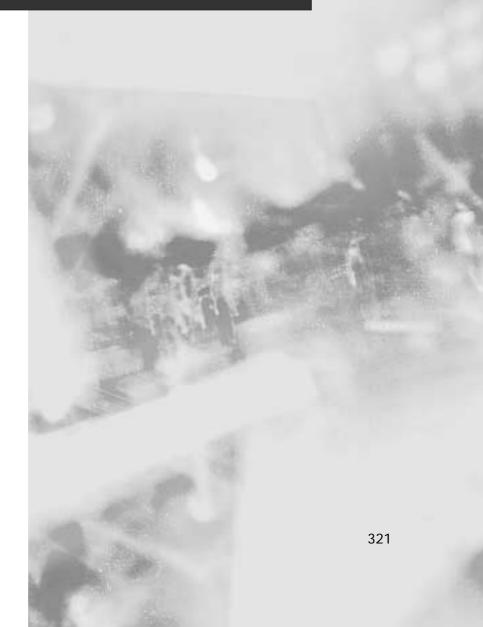
Microsoft has made the creation of adding partitions from free or unallocated space in Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server as easy as starting a wizard, making a few selections, and clicking FINISH. The Create Partition Wizard is started by right-clicking in a free or unallocated space shown in the Disk Management section of Computer Management, and choosing Create Partition or Create Logical Drive (depending on the free/unallocated space you have selected).

The three partition choices available are primary, extended, and logical drive. Choices not available to you for the present operation are grayed out. After selecting the type of partition you want to create, you are prompted to select the size of the partition. The next choice you make is whether you want to assign a drive letter to the new partition and what the drive letter will be, or whether you want to assign the partition to a drive path. Drive paths are only available on NTFS volumes. After making the drive letter/drive path selection, you are prompted on whether you want to format the drive, and if so, what file system you want to use. The file systems supported by Windows 2000 are FAT, FAT32, and NTFS. You can also change the allocation unit size from the default to a range from 512 bytes to 64k bytes, as well as assigning a volume label if so desired. Other choices available on the Format Partition page are performing a quick format and deciding if file and folder compression is enabled. The file and folder compression option is only available if you select NTFS as the file system to use; otherwise, the choice is grayed out.

FAT, FAT32, and NTFS support a variety of operating systems, as well as different file and disk sizes. Your needs may dictate you select one file system over another of the available choices in Windows 2000. For example, if you decide you need to support file encryption on the new partition, you must format the new partition using NTFS, since FAT and FAT32 do not support file encryption.

Chapter 20

System Maintenance Wizards



Introduction

Windows 2000 includes several wizards to assist you in keeping your system running efficiently and effectively. The Scheduled Task Wizard is a scheduling tool designed to make it easy to schedule regular preventive maintenance on your Windows 2000 system, and schedule other tasks you wish to run, whether it is a script, program, or batch file. The Disk Cleanup Wizard is used to safely remove temporary files, resulting in additional resources available for use. Scheduled synchronization offers Administrators the ability to schedule the copying of files from one machine to another. This is useful for several reasons: Administrators can create backup copies of critical data on a regular basis, they can synchronize the data on several Web or FTP servers sharing the load for a large site, or they can automatically distribute files to end-user machines. Synchronizing files is also handy for the mobile users in the organization. By the end of this chapter, you will know how to schedule tasks on your system, remove temporary files from your hard drive, and schedule file and folder synchronization.

Before You Begin

The Scheduled Task Wizard and Disk Cleanup Wizard are straightforward in their use; however, scheduled synchronization of files and folders is not available unless Offline Files is enabled on your system. Offline Files is enabled automatically for Windows 2000 Professional, but is disabled for Windows 2000 Server. To enable Offline Files for Windows 2000 Server, double-click **My Computer** on the desktop, select **Folder Options** from the **Tools** menu, and ensure that **Enable Offline Files** is selected on the **Offline Files** tab.

Another requirement necessary for the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard is that the network share has to be available offline. To accomplish this, you highlight the network share from My Computer, My Network Places, or Windows Explorer, right-click the share, and select **Make Available Offline** from the context menu.

The Purposes of these Wizards

The Scheduled Task Wizard is available for both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. The wizard is used to schedule a task to run daily, weekly, monthly, or at specific times. The task can be a script, program, or batch file.

The Disk Cleanup Wizard is available for both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. The wizard is used to remove offline files, compress unused files, remove temporary Internet files, remove Windows 2000 temporary files, remove ActiveX and Java downloaded program files, remove unused Windows 2000 components, and remove unused programs.

The Scheduled Synchronization Wizard is available for both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. The wizard is used to synchronize files and folders to maintain backup copies of critical data, as well as making files and folders available to mobile users when they are disconnected from network shares.

Information Needed to Work with these Wizards

To use the Scheduled Task Wizard, you need the following:

- The name of the script, program, or batch file you want to schedule
- The time, day, and how often you want the task to run
- The account and password the task will run under.

To use the Disk Cleanup Wizard, you need the following:

• The drive you want to clean up.

To use the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard, you need the following:

- Offline Files enabled
- Files and/or folders marked for synchronization.

The Scheduled Task Wizard

➤ STEP 1

Start the Scheduled Task Wizard.

- Click Start, and select Programs/Accessories/System Tools/Scheduled Tasks.
- Double-click Add Scheduled Task (Figure 20.1).
- ≻ STEP 2

Click Next at the Scheduled Task Wizard welcome page (Figure 20.2).

≻ STEP 3

Scroll down the list, select the application you want to schedule (Figure 20.3), and click **NEXT**. If you want to schedule a script or batch file, you may click **BROWSE...** to find the item.

Figure 20.1 Scheduled Tasks window.

Ele Edit View Favorites	Tools Advanced H	elo			
J=Back + → - ESSe			X 30 E.		
Address D Scheduled Tasks					- @Go
Name A	Schedule	Next Run Time	Last Run Time	Status	L
Add Scheduled Task					
x(2
1 object(s)					

Figure 20.2 The Scheduled Task Wizard welcome page.





Figure 20.3 Selecting the application to schedule.

➤ STEP 4

Enter a name for the task in the dialog box, and select the timeframe for the task to be performed (Figure 20.4).

- **Daily**. If you select this option, click **Next**, and go to Step 5.
- Weekly. If you select this option, click NEXT, and go to Step 6.
- Monthly. If you select this option, click NEXT, and go to Step 7.
- **One time only**. If you select this option, click **NEXT**, and go to Step 8.
- When my computer starts. If you select this option, click NEXT, and go to Step 9.
- When I log on. If you select this option, click NEXT, and go to Step 9.
- ➤ STEP 5

Select the start time, the day(s) to perform the task, and the start date (Figure 20.5). Click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 9.

➤ STEP 6

Select the start time, the week span, and the day(s) of the week to perform the task (Figure 20.6). Click **Next**, and proceed to Step 9.

Figure 20.4 Naming the task and selecting the timeframe it is performed.



Figure 20.5 Setting the Daily options.

Scheduled Task Wizard	×
R	Select the time and day you want this task to start. Start jime: 22 PM 22 PM Perform this task: © Every Dgy Weekdays © Every 1 Start gate: 2/11/2000
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> est⇒ Cancel

≻ STEP 7

Select the start time, the day to perform the task, and the month(s) (Figure 20.7). Click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 9.

≻ STEP 8

Select the start time and the start date (Figure 20.8). Click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 9.

Figure 20.6 Setting the Weekly options.



Figure 20.7 Setting the Monthly options.

Scheduled Task Wizard				×
	Select the Start time:	time and day y	ou want this t	ask to start.
2	C Day	_	Y Mond	w v
	Of the more			
	🔽 Jan	🖂 фр	🖂 Jul	I Det
Contraction of the	🔽 Eeb	🔽 Mag	🖂 Aug	R Nog
	🔽 Mar	🔽 Jyn	🗵 Sep	I⊽ Dgc
	0	< Back	Net >	Cancel

≻ STEP 9

Enter the name and password for the account that the task will run under (Figure 20.9), and click **NEXT**. Be sure the account has sufficient privileges to run the task.

Figure 20.8 Setting the One time only options.

Scheduled Task Wizard	×
R	Select the time and day you want this task to start. Start time: 23 PM Start gate: 2/11/2000
	< <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

Figure 20.9 Setting the name and password of the user account.

Scheduled Task Wizard		×
	Enter the name and par sun as if it were started	steroord of a user. The task will by that user.
. 9	Enter the user righte:	SDC\SDCAdmin
	Enter the gassword	
Contraction of the second	Confirm password:	
	< Back	Nest> Cancel

≻ STEP 10

The Completing the Scheduled Task Wizard page displays a summary of the completed task (Figure 20.10). Click **FINISH** to close the Scheduled Task Wizard, and proceed to Step 15.

Figure 20.10 Completing the Scheduled Task Wizard page.



NOTE

If you need to set additional parameters for the task, select the check box located to the left of **Open advanced properties for this task when I click Finish**, and go to Step 11.

➤ STEP 11

The Task tab of advanced properties (Figure 20.11) allows you to modify the following parameters:

- The path of the program to run and the parameters it will use. Notice the extra parameters shown in Figure 20.11.
- The directory the program starts in
- The account the program runs under
- Enabling or disabling of the task.

➤ STEP 12

The Schedule tab of advanced properties (Figure 20.12) allows you to modify the following parameters:

- The timeframe the task is run
- The start time of the task
- Advanced settings, including end date, repeating task options, and duration.

Figure 20.11 The Task tab of advanced properties.

Windilf	2 X
Task Scher	lule Settings Security
R N:W	WINNT\Tasks\Windittjab
Bunc	A~1\SUPPOR~1\windiff.exe C:\paper: N:\paper: -Srd x
	Browse
Start in:	N:VPROGRA=1\SUPPOR=1
<u>C</u> omments:	
Ryn ar:	SDC\SDCAdmin Set password.
Enabled	scheduled task runs at specified time)
	DK Cancel Apply

Figure 20.12 The Schedule tab of advanced properties.

Windiff 🛛 🕅 🖾
Task, Schedule Settings Security
At 4:00 AM every Sun of every week, starting 2/11/2000
Schedule Task: Start time: Weekly • 4:00 AM * Advanced
Schedule Task Weekly
Every 1 → week(s) arx Man Set
Show multiple schedules
DK. Cancel Apply

➤ STEP 13

The Settings tab of advanced properties (Figure 20.13) allows you to modify the following parameters:

- Task completion options
- Idle time options
- Power management options.

Figure 20.13 The Settings tab of advanced properties.

Windilf 🗉 🖾
Task Schedule Setting: Security
Scheduled Task. Completed Delete the task if it is not scheduled to run again. Stop the task if it runs for 72bour(s) 0minute(s).
Ide Time
Power Management Don't start the task if the computer is running on batteries. Stop the task if battery mode begins.
DK. Cancel Apply

➤ STEP 14

The Security tab of advanced properties (Figure 20.14) allows you to modify the following parameters:

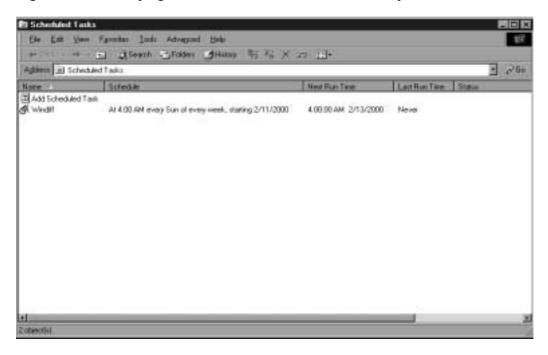
- Adding and removing users and groups
- Setting permissions for users and groups
- Advanced access control settings, including granular permissions, auditing, and owner options.

➤ STEP 15

Verify that the scheduled task appears in the Scheduled Tasks window (Figure 20.15). Figure 20.14 The Security tab of advanced properties.

Windiff		? ×
Task Schedule Settings Security		
Name	I	Add.
SYSTEM		Benove
Permissions: A	llow	Deny
	2	
	2	
	2	
	2	ă
Advanced	to th	ia -
OK Cance	1	Apple

Figure 20.15 Verifying the scheduled task is added correctly.



The Disk Cleanup Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Disk Cleanup Wizard.

- Click Start, select Programs/Accessories/System Tools/Disk Cleanup.
- Select the drive you want to clean up (Figure 20.16), and click Ok. The wizard will calculate the amount of free space you will be able to free up.

Figure 20.16 Selecting a drive to clean up.

Select Drive	? X
Select the drive you want to	clean up.
Drives:	
= (N:)	
OK	Egit

➤ STEP 2

Place a check mark in the boxes to the left of the files you want to delete (Figure 20.17), click the **More Options** tab, and proceed to Step 3. You can select to delete the following:

- **Downloaded Program Files**. ActiveX and Java applets that have been downloaded from the Internet.
- **Temporary Internet Files**. Web pages stored on your hard drive.
- **Recycle Bin Files** that have been deleted from your system.
- Temporary files. Temporary files left over from applications.
- **Temporary Offline Files**. Local copies of files recently used from the network.
- **Offline Files**. Local copies of files specifically made to be available while offline.
- **Compress old files**. Windows 2000 can compress files that you do not access frequently. The number of days to set compression after is an option you can set for these types of files.

Figure 20.17 The Disk Cleanup tab of the Disk Cleanup Wizard.

🚵 Disk Cleanup for (N:)	? ×
Disk Cleanup More Options	
You can use Disk Eleanup to free up to space on (NI).	o 68,895 KB of disk
Eiles to delete:	
Downloaded Program Files	0 KB 🗖
Temporary Internet Files	340 KB
Recycle Bin	1 KB
Temporary files	203 KB
C iii) Temporary Diffine Files	10,195 KB 🔹
Total amount of disk space you gain: Description	10,535 KB
Downloaded Program Files are ActiveX contro downloaded automatically from the Internet wi pages. They are temporally stored in the Dow Files folder on your hard disk.	hen you view ceitain
	<u>⊻</u> iew Files
	DK. Cancel

NOTE

Selecting **View Files** gives you the option to see the files that will be downloaded. You may want to use this button to double-check the files before deleting them to ensure you don't accidentally delete a file you want to keep.

➤ STEP 3

The **More Options** tab allows you to free up disk space by removing the following items (Figure 20.18):

- Optional Windows 2000 components
- Installed programs

Select the items you want to clean up, and click $O\kappa$. You are prompted to continue with the file deletion or cancel the Disk Cleanup Wizard.

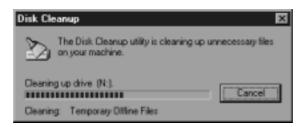
Figure 20.18 The More Options tab of the Disk Cleanup Wizard.

🚵 Disk Cle	sanup for (N:) 🛛 🖾
Disk Clean	up More Options
Window	vo componento
影	You can free more disk space by removing optional Windows components that you do not use.
	Cjean up
-Installe	d programs
贵	You can free more disk space by removing programs that you do not use.
	Clean up
	0K Cancel

≻ STEP 4

The Disk Cleanup Wizard shows the status of its cleaning-up activity (Figure 20.19).

Figure 20.19 The Disk Cleanup Wizard cleaning up the hard drive.



The Scheduled Synchronization Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Starting the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard is slightly different from other wizards you used in earlier chapters. The first step is to double-click **My Computer** on your desktop and select **Synchronize...** from the **Tools** menu. The **Items to Synchronize** window is displayed (Figure 20.20). Click **SETUP...** to configure the Synchronization Settings.

NOTE

You may also select Synchronize... from the Tools menu of My Network Places, Windows Explorer, or Internet Explorer. The choice is also available from Start/Programs/Accessories/Synchronize.

Figure 20.20 The Items to Synchronize window showing no offline files to currently synchronize.



≻ STEP 2

To start the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard, select the **Scheduled** tab and click **Add...** (Figure 20.21).

➤ STEP 3

Click **NEXT** at the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard welcome page (Figure 20.22).

Figure 20.21 The Scheduled tab of the Synchronization Settings window.

Synchronization Settings
Logon/Logoff On Idle Scheduled
You can add synchronization tasks to your schedule and remove or edit existing ones.
Quirent synchronization tasks:
Add Berrow: Ect
OK Cancel Asstr

Figure 20.22 The Scheduled Synchronization Wizard welcome page.



≻ STEP 4

All network shares that have been made available offline are displayed in the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard (Figure 20.23). The network connections available for selection are dependent upon the connections setup on your system and may include Dial-Up Networking. Select the share that you want to schedule for synchronization, and click **NEXT**.

NOTE

If no offline files are shown on this page, then either Offline Files is not enabled or you have not marked any network share as being available for offline use.

Figure 20.23 Selecting the offline files that are to be synchronized.

Scheduled Synchronization Wizard		
R	Income a network, connection for this synchronization. Image LAN Connection Image LAN Connection Image LAN Connection, synchronize these items: Image LAN Connection Image LAN Connection Image LAN Connection Image LAN Connection Image LAN Connected Image LAN Connected	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>	

≻ STEP 5

This page allows you to select the start time for the synchronization, how often to perform the task, and the start date for the synchronization task (Figure 20.24). The following options are available:

- Every Day
- Weekdays
- Every ?, where ? can be any number ranging from 1 to 365

Make the appropriate selections, and click NEXT.

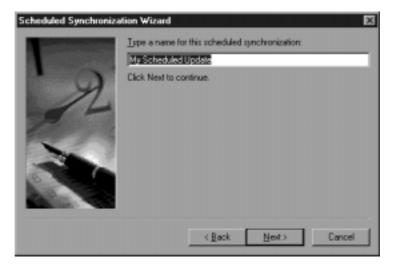
≻ STEP 6

Enter a name for the scheduled synchronization (Figure 20.25), and click **NEXT**.

Figure 20.24 Selecting the day, time, and reoccurrence for the synchronization task to start.

Scheduled Synchronize	ition Wizard 🛛 🕅
	Select the time and day you want this synchronization to start.
2	Perform this task: C Every Day
-	Wreekdows Every dags
	Start gate: 1/30/2000
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

Figure 20.25 Entering a name for the scheduled synchronization.



➤ STEP 7

The Completing the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard page displays a summary of the task you have scheduled to synchronize (Figure 20.26). Click **FINISH** to close the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard.

Figure 20.26 Completing the Scheduled Synchronization Wizard.



Summary

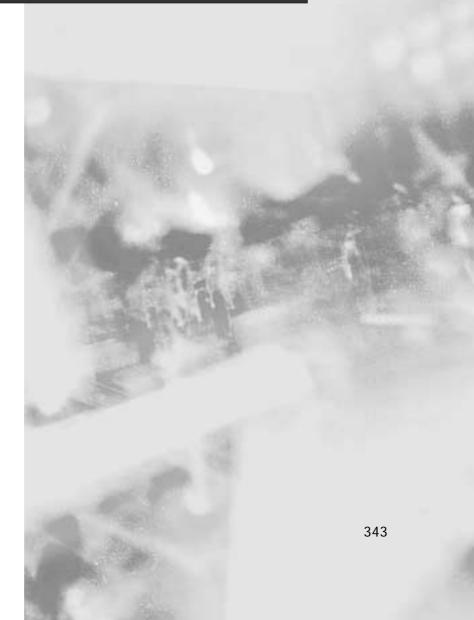
The Scheduled Task Wizard is used to schedule a task to occur at a specific time. The task can be scheduled daily, weekly, monthly, one time only, when your computer starts up, or when you log on. Depending on when the task is scheduled (weekly, monthly, etc.), you can control the timeframe it runs, such as only on Mondays or the 24th of each month. Scripts, programs, and batch files can be scheduled using the Scheduled Task Wizard. You can pass extra parameters to the task by using the advanced properties pages for the task. Other settings from the advanced properties pages include security and settings.

The Disk Cleanup Wizard is used to free up hard drive space by eliminating offline files, emptying the recycle bin, compressing unused files, removing temporary Internet files, and other items. You can use the More Options tab to select Windows 2000 components or other installed programs you no longer use.

The Scheduled Synchronization Wizard is used to synchronize files and folders to/from a Windows 2000 system. The wizard is available to both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. In order to take advantage of the wizard, two criteria must be met: Offline Files must be enabled, and the network share must be marked as available offline. Windows 2000 Professional defaults to offline files being enabled, and Windows 2000 Server defaults to offline files being disabled. The first step in starting the wizard is accomplished by choosing Synchronize... from the Tools menu from My Computer, My Network Places, Windows Explorer, or Internet Explorer. After completing all the steps to start the wizard, you select the network share(s) you wish to synchronize, select the start time, start date, and how often the task is to run. After assigning a name to the task and clicking FINISH, the synchronization is scheduled and will occur based on the settings chosen.

Chapter 21

Environment Configuration Wizards



Introduction

Everyone likes to customize their work environment, and Windows 2000 offers several wizards to make it a little easier. This chapter includes wizards for creating new shortcuts, configuring folder views, and creating new taskpad views. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to configure your machine exactly the way you like it.

Before You Begin

The three wizards discussed in this chapter can be individually set up by several users using the same machine. Each person can customize the machine without overwriting another person's settings. Windows 2000 saves the settings for each user and activates that user's settings when the user logs on.

The Purposes of these Wizards

The purpose of the first wizard discussed, Create Shortcut Wizard, is to allow users to create shortcuts on the Programs menu. The second wizard discussed, Customize This Folder Wizard, allows users to change various parameters for folders. The third and final wizard discussed in this chapter, New Taskpad View Wizard, is used to change the view parameters for tree items in the Microsoft Management Console (MMC). All three wizards are available in Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server.

Information Needed to Work with these Wizards

To use the Create Shortcut Wizard, you need one of the following for the shortcut you want to create:

- Network program
- File
- Folder
- Computer
- Internet address

To use the Customize This Folder Wizard, you need the following:

• Folder you wish to change the appearance of

To use the New Taskpad View Wizard, you need the following:

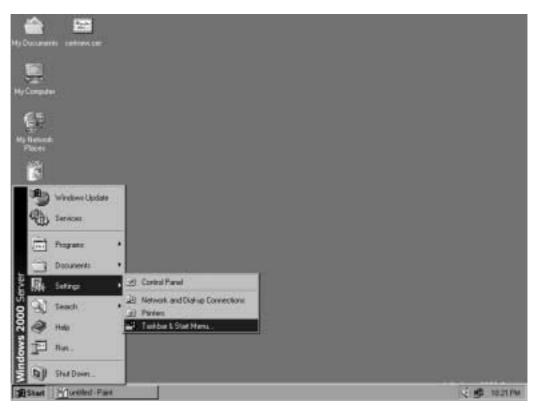
- Microsoft Management Console
- Tree item

The Create Shortcut Wizard

≻ STEP 1

The first step to starting the Create Shortcut Wizard is to select Start/Settings/Taskbar & Start Menu... (Figure 21.1).

Figure 21.1 Selecting Taskbar & Start Menu... from the Settings menu.



➤ STEP 2

Select the **Advanced** tab, and click **ADD...** (Figure 21.2).

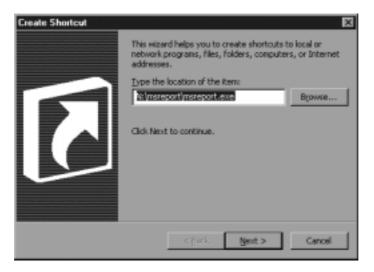
➤ STEP 3

Enter the location of the item you want to create a shortcut for (Figure 21.3). If you do not know the complete path, use **Browse...** to find the item, and then click **NEXT**.

Figure 21.2 Starting the Create Shortcut Wizard by clicking ADD... on the Advanced tab of the Taskbar & Start Menu Properties.

Taskbar and Sta	art Menu Properties	? ×
General Advan	ced	
Custonize St	art menu	
Yo No	u can customize your	Add
	art menu by adding or moving Rems from R.	Remove
	-	
		Adganced
		Resport
3 re	o remove records of cently accessed	
	cuments, programs, and leb sites, click Clear.	⊈jear
Start Menu Set	tings	
	ministrative Tools	-
Display Fa		
Display Lo	gorr ontrol Panel	
E copand co		
	OK Can	el épsiy
		DP/47

Figure 21.3 Identifying the location of the item you are creating the shortcut for.



≻ STEP 4

Select the folder you want to place the shortcut in (Figure 21.4). If the folder does not already exist, proceed to Step 5. If the folder does exist, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 6.

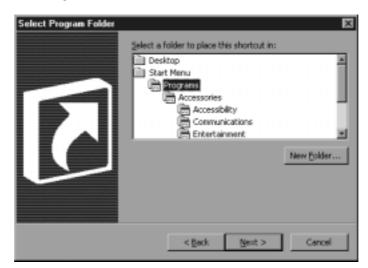


Figure 21.4 Selecting the folder for the shortcut.

≻ STEP 5

Click **New Folder...**, and create a new folder for the shortcut (Figure 21.5). Click **Next** after selecting the folder.

Figure 21.5 Creating a new folder for the shortcut.

Select Program Folder		×
	Select a folder to place this shortout in: Communications Entertainment System Tools Administrative Tools MSReport Startup	× New Folder
	< <u>B</u> eck Next >	Cancel

≻ STEP 6

Enter a name for the shortcut in the dialog box (Figure 21.6), and click **FINISH**.

Figure 21.6 Entering a name for the new shortcut.

Select a Title for the Pro	gan 🛛
	Type a name for this shortout: MS Report
R	Click Finish to create the shortcut.
	< Back Finish Cancel

≻ STEP 7

Verify that the shortcut appears on the Programs menu in the folder you intended for it to (Figure 21.7).

NOTE

If you want the shortcut to appear in the root of the Programs menu, place the shortcut in the Programs folder.

The Customize This Folders Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Customize This Folder Wizard.

- Start Windows Explorer from Start/Programs/Accessories.
- Select the Folder you want to customize.
- Select **Customize This Folder...** from the View menu (Figure 21.8).

≻ STEP 2

Click **Next** at the Customize This Folder Wizard welcome page (Figure 21.9).

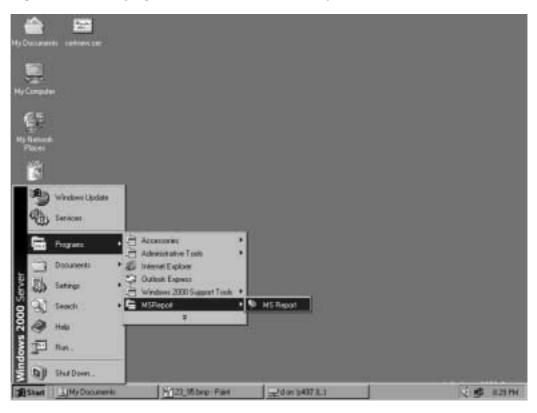


Figure 21.7 Verifying the new shortcut that was just created.

➤ STEP 3

The Customize This Folder offers the following options (Figure 21.10):

- Customize
 - Choose or edit an HTML template for this folder
 - Modify background picture and filename appearance
 - Add folder comment
- Remove customizations

When customizing a folder, you can choose to change any or all of the appearance settings.

olders Toolbars	e -	Size	Туре	Modified
Desktop My Doc	CANDISK.LOG	12 KB	Test Document	8/22/1999 3.48 PM
My Lage Icons Set Small Icons My Con List				
E IX Thumbnails IX				
E- Loc Line Up Icons				
Loc Locationize This Folder				
Los GoTo Los Refresh Los Companyes				
Compact Disc (Mt) Local Disk (Nt) Documents and Settin				
⊕ ☐ Instpub — ☐ Insteport ⊕ ☐ Program Files				
E WINNT				
E Control Panel				

Figure 21.8 Starting the Customize This Folder Wizard.

Figure 21.9 The Customize This Folder Wizard welcome page.



- If you select to choose or edit an HTML template, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 4.
- If you select to modify the background picture, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 5.
- If you select to add a folder comment, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 6.
- If you select to remove customizations (if available), proceed to Step 7.

NOTE

If you decide to choose or edit an HTML template, you need to ensure WebView is enabled for all folders. If it is not enabled, you will receive a dialog box prompting you to enable it before you can continue.

Figure 21.10 Selecting to add or remove folder customization.

Customize This Folder Wizard	×
Customize This Folder Do you want to customize this folder or remove previous customizations?	Q)
What would you like to do?	
C Benave custorizations	
Tark Description	
This option allows you to customize one or many of the aspects of the folder's appearance.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

➤ STEP 4

There are four templates available for selection when you select **Choose a template** (Figure 21.11):

- **Standard**. This is the default, full-featured template for the majority of folders in Windows 2000.
- **Classic (icons only)**. This template is empty except for the icons.
- **Simple**. This template respects system colors and uses the folder icons control, but it does not contain any script.
- **Image Preview**. Mainly useful for viewing folders that contain image files. It shows a preview and specific image properties of the selected file.

You may also edit the selected template if you desire. If you choose **I want to edit this template**, Notepad will open the template file for editing when you click **NEXT**. Make your selection, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 8.

Figure 21.11 The four options available on the Change Folder Template page.

Customize This Folder Witzerd Change Folder Template Customize the folder template to best fit your m	eeds for this folder.
Choose a template: Standard Dispositional (cit/d) Simple Image Preview	Preview:
Template description This template is empty except for the folder ic or to simulate a classic folder without turning to I want to gdit this template.	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 5

The Modify Background and Filename Appearance page allows you to select a background picture from the list or browse your system. You can also select the color for the text and background of the filenames (Figure 21.12). Make your selections, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 8.

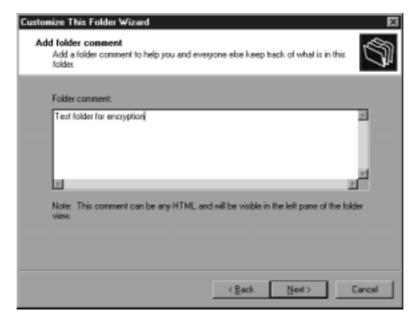
Figure 21.12 The Modify Background and Filename Appearance page.

	er Witzend IX nd and Filename Appearance ou better see the folder's contents.
Preview:	Select a background picture from the fist below: None Image: Select a background picture from the fist below: Bue Lace 16.bmp Image: Select a background picture for this folder: Boding Context Background picture for this folder: Browse Filename Appearance Image: Select Background Image: Image: Select Background Background
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

≻ STEP 6

The Add folder comment page allows you to add a comment to the folder (Figure 21.13). Enter a comment, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 8.

Figure 21.13 The Add folder comment page.



≻ STEP 7

Select the customizations you want to remove, and click **NEXT** (Figure 21.14). Only customizations applied to the folder are selectable; the other options are grayed out.

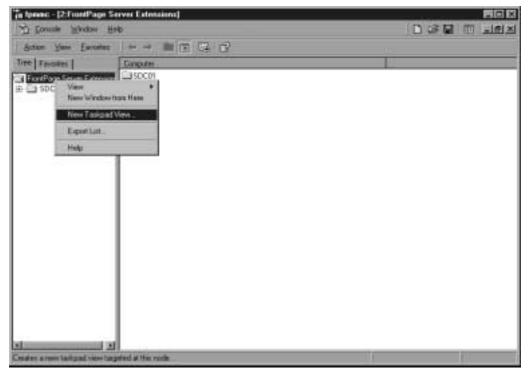
Figure 21.14 The Remove Customizations page.

Customize This Folder Wizard Remove Customizations You can remove specific customizations t	hat you no longer	need	© 8
Check one or more items:			
Restore defauit folder template			
Ferrove background gicture			
Restore filename gopearance			
Pernove folder gamment			
	< <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Cancel

Figure 21.15 Completing the Customize This Folder Wizard page.



Figure 21.16 Starting the New Taskpad View Wizard for FrontPage Server Extensions.



➤ STEP 8

The Completing the Customize This Folder Wizard will display a summary of what was completed (Figure 21.15). Click **FINISH** to close the Customize This Folder Wizard.

New Taskpad View Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the New Taskpad View Wizard.

- Open Server Extensions Administrator from the Administrative Tools menu.
- Right-click FrontPage Server Extensions, and select New Taskpad View... from the context menu (Figure 21.16).

NOTE

New Taskpad Views are available for the majority of tree items in the Microsoft Management Console; FrontPage Server Extensions is just one example.

≻ STEP 2

Click **Next** at the New Taskpad View Wizard welcome page (Figure 21.17).

Figure 21.17 The New Taskpad View Wizard welcome page.



≻ STEP 3

The Taskpad Display page includes the following options (Figure 21.18):

- Vertical list. This option is best for long lists.
- Horizontal list. This option is best for multiple column lists.
- **No list**. This option is best for tasks that are not connected to list items.
- Text

- InfoTip
- List size. Small, Medium, Large. Option is not available if No list is selected.

Make your selections, and click NEXT.

Figure 21.18 The Taskpad Display page.

Style for the details pa	ne:	-	147 (%	_
C ⊻ertical list				
 Horizontal list 				101010101010
C Ng list				1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Style for task descripti	ons	3	<u>e 12</u>	
C Tegt		Best fi	or multiple coli	umn liste
InfoTig (display	s description in a pop-	up		
List gize: Large	1			

➤ STEP 4

The Taskpad Target page gives you the opportunity to apply the taskpad view to the selected tree item or all tree items of the same type (Figure 21.19). Make a selection, and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 5

Enter a name and description for the new taskpad in the corresponding dialog boxes (Figure 21.20), and click **NEXT**.

≻ STEP 6

The Completing the New Taskpad View Wizard page shows the successful completion of the wizard (Figure 21.21). Click **FINISH** to close the New Taskpad View Wizard.

➤ STEP 7

Verify that the new taskpad view meets your needs (Figure 21.22). Notice that you can choose the Normal tab to return to the original taskpad view.

Figure 21.19 The Taskpad Target page.

En Taskpad View Witzard Taskpad Tasget You can apply this taskpad view to more than one tree item.	ŝ
Select whether this taskpad view will apply to the current tree item only, or to al items of this type.	Itee
Apply this taskpad view to:	
C Selected tree item	
It was that are the same type as the selected tree item	
P Dhange default display to this taskpad view for these tree items	
< Eack Next >	Cancel

Figure 21.20 The Name and Description page.

New Taskpad View	Wizard			×
Name and Desor You can type a	iption new name and a description	for this taskpad.		
Type the taskp	d information below.			
Ngrie	FrontPage Server Exten	sions		
Description:				
_				
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 21.21 Completing the New Taskpad View Wizard page.





🖞 Console <u>W</u> indows He		D 📽 🖬	
Tree Favorier	FrontPage Server Extensions		
-OI socia	Carester : Carester :	1	
	<u></u>		_
	Teamad FrontPage Serve Educators		

Summary

Windows 2000 offers several wizards to allow users the capability to customize their computing environment. Users of the same computer can customize the system for their likes without affecting the settings of the other system users. The three wizards discussed in this chapter are the Create Shortcut Wizard, the Customize This Folder Wizard, and the New Taskpad View Wizard.

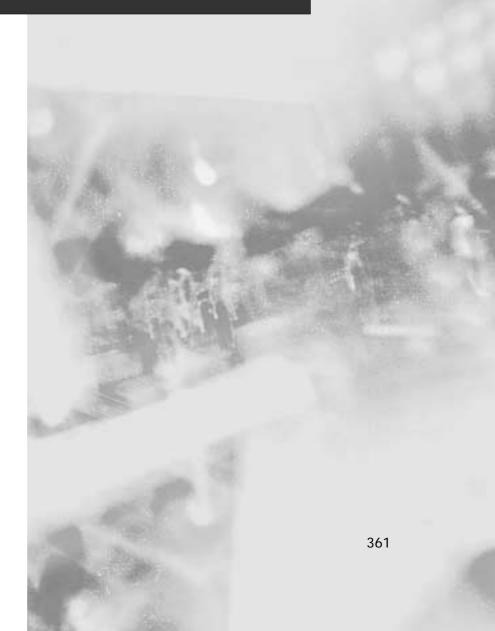
The Create Shortcut Wizard allows users to easily add shortcuts to the Programs menu, either in an existing folder or a newly created folder. Even the Programs folder can be used to hold the shortcut if you want the item to be seen from the root of the Programs menu.

The Customize This Folder Wizard gives you the opportunity to select from several options for a folder. Those options include selecting an HTML template, modifying the background and filename appearance, and adding a folder comment. It is also possible to use the Customize This Folder Wizard to remove customizations that were previously installed on folders.

The New Taskpad View Wizard allows you to create a new view for tree items in the Microsoft Management Console (MMC). This wizard gives you choices on how the data in the right pane is displayed, including vertical list, horizontal list, and even no list. Your choice for the new taskpad view can be applied to the selected tree item or to all tree items of the same type.

Chapter 22

Accessibility Wizard



Introduction

Microsoft provides a number of configurable options to make Windows more accessible to those with disabilities or special needs. By the end of this chapter, you will be able to configure Windows 2000 to meet your needs.

Before You Begin

You may not necessarily need to use the Accessibility Wizard for your own workstation, but you may possibly need to help other users in your organization run it on their workstations. For this reason, it is a good idea to be very familiar with what the wizard can offer you and the other users in your organization.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Accessibility Wizard is available in both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. The purpose of the wizard is to make computing easier for everyone, regardless of the disability they may have.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

To use the Accessibility Wizard you will need to know the following:

- Does the user suffer from vision problems?
- Does the user suffer from hearing problems?
- Does the user suffer from mobility problems?

The Accessibility Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Accessibility Wizard.

- Click Start, and select
 Programs/Accessories/Accessibility/Accessibility Wizard.
- Click Next on the Accessibility Wizard welcome page (Figure 22.1).

≻ STEP 2

Select the size of the smallest text you can comfortably read from the three choices shown on the Text Size page (Figure 22.2), and click **NEXT**.



Figure 22.1 The Accessibility Wizard welcome page.

Figure 22.2 Adjusting the Text Size that Windows displays.



- Use usual text size for Windows. No change made in the text size displayed in Windows.
- Use large window titles and menus. Increases the size of menus and windows titles.
- Use Microsoft Magnifier, and large titles and menus. Starts the Microsoft Magnifier and allows the magnification level to be set, as well as other options dealing with the Microsoft Magnifier as soon as **NEXT** is clicked. The Microsoft Magnifier defaults to displaying the magnified text at the top of your monitor in a separate window. The text displayed wherever the mouse cursor is located is the text magnified.

➤ STEP 3

Select the options you want from the Display Settings page (Figure 22.3), and click **NEXT**. Some options may already be selected based upon the choice made on the previous page of the Accessibility Wizard, while other choices may not be selectable. There are four options available:

- **Change the font size**. Window title bars' and menus' font size is changed, but not the text size within windows.
- Switch to a lower screen resolution. Choose this option to increase the size of text inside windows, as well as all items on the screen.
- Use Microsoft Magnifier. As previously mentioned, the Microsoft Magnifier magnifies text at the cursor location in a separate window on your monitor.
- **Disable personalized menus**.

NOTE

If the only selection you make on this page is to disable personalized menus, you will receive the following information two screens later:

No Options Selected

You did not select any options.

You did not select any areas to configure. Click Back to return to the options page or click Next to continue.

Even though this message is displayed, personalized menus have been turned off. For more information on this issue, please see Microsoft Knowledgebase article Q244930. Figure 22.3 The Display Settings page.

Accessibility Wizaed 🛛 🛛 🖾
Display Settings The following options determine the size of test and other items on your screen.
Select the options you want. The preselected options are based on the font size you selected on the previous screen.
Change the font size
Changes the fort size for window title bars, menus, and other features. This option does not increase the size of test inside windows.
Sylich to a lower screen resolution
Increases the size of items on screen, including the test inside windows.
Use Microsoft Magnifier
Opens a floating window that displays an enlarged view of part of the screen.
Disable personalized menus
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

≻ STEP 4

Select the option(s) required for your circumstances on the Set Wizard Options page (Figure 22.4).

- I am blind or have difficulty seeing things on screen. If this option is applicable, go to Step 6.
- I am deaf or have difficulty hearing sounds from the computer. If this option is applicable, go to Step 11.
- I have difficulty using the keyboard or mouse. If this option is applicable, go to Step 14.
- I want to set administrative option. If this option is applicable, go to Step 25.

You may also click **Restore Default Settings** to return the system to the default settings.

➤ STEP 5

If you fail to make any choices on the Set Wizard Options page, you will be prompted to click **BACK** (Figure 22.5).

➤ STEP 6

Select the **I am blind or have difficulty seeing things on screen** option (Figure 22.6), and click **NEXT**.

Figure 22.4 The Set Wizards Options page.

eing things on screen	
	I am blind or have difficulty
aring sounds from the computer	
coard or mouse	□ I have difficulty using the k
tions	I want to set administrative
	Bestore Default Setting:

Figure 22.5 The No Options Selected page.

No Options Selected You did not select any options.		
You did not select any areas to configure. click Next to continue.	Click Back to return to the options page, or	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Car	icel

≻ STEP 7

Select the Scroll Bar and Window Border Size that best suits your needs (Figure 22.7), and click **NEXT**.

Figure 22.6 Selecting the I am blind or have difficulty seeing things on screen option.

0.00001.010.000000	ents that apply to you:			
_	have difficulty seeing things			
	ave difficulty hearing sound		ler	
	ty using the keyboard or mo	U08		
I mank to set	administrative options			
Bestore Dela	uit Setting:			

Figure 22.7 The Scroll Bar and Window Border Size page.

Accessibility Wizard Scroll Bar and Window Berder Size You can select the size of scroll bars a	nd window borders.	
Select the scrol bar and window borde	r size you wark:	
	•	▼ //
	< <u>B</u> ack	Next> Cancel

≻ STEP 8

Select the Icon Size that best suits your needs (Figure 22.8), and click **NEXT**. There are three icon sizes available:

- Normal
- Large
- Extra Large

Figure 22.8 The Icon Size page.

Accessibility Wizard Icon Size You can choose the size of	the icons on your desktap.	
Select the icon size you want		
Normal	Large	Extra Large
	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel

≻ STEP 9

Select the color scheme that best suits your needs (Figure 22.9), and click **NEXT**. There are six choices of color schemes available:

- Current Color Scheme
- High Contrast #1
- High Contrast #2
- High Contrast Black
- High Contrast White
- Default Windows Colors





➤ STEP 10

Select the size and color of the mouse cursor that best suits your needs (Figure 22.10), click **Next**, and proceed to Step 28. Three size choices are available:

- Regular
- Large
- Extra Large

Three color choices are available:

- White
- Black
- Inverting
- ≻ STEP 11

Select I am deaf or have difficulty hearing sounds from the computer (Figure 22.11), and click NEXT. Figure 22.10 The Mouse Cursor page.

cosssibility Wizard Mouse Cursor You can choose the si	ze and color of	your mouse cu	eron.	
Select the mouse ourse	r that is the siz	e and color you	u want:	
	White	Black.	Inveting	
Regular	₿I	۲I	7	
Large	₽1	ΝI	FI	
Extra Large	⊳ I	ΝI		
		< <u>B</u> a	sck Next> Cancel	

Figure 22.11 Selecting the I am deaf or have difficulty hearing sounds from the computer option.

Accessibility Wizard Set Wizard Options You can configure Windows for your vis	ion, hearing, and mobility needs.	<u> </u>
Select the statements that apply to you: I am blind or have difficulty seeing if I am geal or have difficulty hearing s I have difficulty using the gayboard o I want to set gdministrative options Bestore Default Settings	ounds from the computer	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ewt> Co	ncel

➤ STEP 12

The SoundSentry page allows you to turn on visual warnings notifying you of system events (Figure 22.12). Select either **Yes** or **No**, and click **Next**.

Figure 22.12 The SoundSentry page.

essibility Wizard			×
SoundSentry Windows can display visual warnings for sy	stem sounds.		
If you are deaf or hard of hearing, you may system events.	want to have vis	ual warnings notił;	you of
Do you want programs that offer this feature	e to display capti	ons for speech an	d counds?
(* Yes			
C Ng			
	< Back	Next>	Cancel
		- Henry	

≻ STEP 13

The ShowSounds page allows you to turn on captions for speech and sounds (Figure 22.13). Select either **Yes** or **No**, click **Next**, and proceed to Step 28.

➤ STEP 14

Select I have difficulty using the keyboard or mouse (Figure 22.14), and click NEXT.

➤ STEP 15

If you have difficulty holding down multiple keys at the same time, you may want to enable StickyKeys. StickyKeys allows you to press one key at a time, even when multiple keys are required for the function you are performing. Select **Yes** or **No** (Figure 22.15), and click **NEXT**.

Figure 22.13 The ShowSounds page.

es	sibility Wizard
Sh	owSounds In some software programs, you can display captions for speech and sounds.
	If you are deal or hard of hearing, you may want to see captions for speech and sounds.
	Do you want programs that offer this feature to display captions for speech and sounds?
	(* Yes
	C Ng
	< <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel

Figure 22.14 Selecting the I have difficulty using the keyboard or mouse option.

scessibility Wizard Set Wizard Options You can configure Windows for	your vision, hearing, and m	xobiilty needs.	
Select the statements that apply	to your		
I am blind or have difficulty s			
I am gleaf or have difficulty h		oputer	
F have difficulty using the key	board or mouse		
I want to set administrative of	ptions		
Bestore Default Settings			
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 22.15 The StickyKeys page.

Accessibility Wizard	×
StickyKeys You do not have to hold down two keys at once.	
If you find it difficult to hold down several keys at once, you may have trouble with key combinations (such as CTRL+ALT+DELETE). Instead of pressing and holding several keys at once, you can press each key one at a time. This applies to key combinations that use SHIFT, CTRL, or ALT.	
Do you want to press keys in key combinations one at a time?	
(* Mer	
C Ng	_
	_
	_
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Car	loel

➤ STEP 16

If you suffer from motion disabilities to the point that you may unintentionally press the same key too often, you may want Windows to ignore those repeated keystrokes. This is accomplished on the BounceKeys page (Figure 22.16). If you select **Yes**, click **NEXT** and go to Step 17. If you select **No**, click **NEXT** and proceed to Step 18.

NOTE

Microsoft seems to use BounceKeys and FilterKeys interchangeably. If you access the same functions from Accessibility Options in Control Panel, it is called FilterKeys. On some screens of the Accessibility Wizard, it is also called FilterKeys.

➤ STEP 17

Two settings can be set when you have enabled BounceKeys (Figure 22.17). Make your selection(s), and click **NEXT**.

• **Ignore keystrokes repeated faster than:** The delay is adjusted using the slider and moving it from shorter to longer.

• **Do you want Windows to beep when it accepts a keystroke?** This may help you to adjust the time delay for ignoring keystrokes more accurately.

Figure 22.16 The BounceKeys page.

ccessibili	ly Wizard				E
Bounce You	Keys can set Windows t	o ignore repeated	keystrokes.		
II yo	u have motion disal	ilities, You might a	accidentally press	: a key too many t	imez.
Doj	ou want Windows I	o ignore repeated	lkeystrokes?		
•	(es				
01	۹o				
			< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel

Figure 22.17 The BounceKeys Settings page.

Ignore	keystrokes repeated fast	ter than:			
0.50	seconds Short 🖓		Lo	10	
Do you	want Windows to beep	when it accepts	a keystroke?		
⊙ ⊻e					
C Ng					
Lypeh	are to test BounceKeys :	settings:			
Liber	re to test Bouncefleys :	anangs:			_

≻ STEP 18

If you want Windows to play a sound when certain keys are pressed, you can enable this functionality on the ToggleKeys page. Select **Yes** or **No** (Figure 22.18), and click **NEXT**. Three keys will initiate a sound when pressed:

- CAPS LOCK
- NUM LOCK
- SCROLL LOCK

Figure 22.18 The ToggleKeys page.

Accessibility Wizard	×
ToggleKeys You can set Windows to play a sound when you press CAPS LOCK, NUM LOCK, or SCROLL LOCK.	
It's easy to accidentally press CAPS LOCK, NUM LOCK, or SCROLL LOCK.	
Do you want Windows to play a sound whenever you press CAPS LOCK, NUM LOCK or SCROLL LOCK?	
(* Yes	
C Ng	
< <u>∎</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Can	cel

➤ STEP 19

It is possible to receive extra instructions or ToolTips for using the keyboard. To enable this functionality, you select **Yes** on the Extra Keyboard Help page (Figure 22.19). Select **Yes** or **No**, and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 20

If you do not like, or cannot use, a mouse, you may want to enable MouseKeys. MouseKeys allows you to use the numeric keypad on your keyboard to control the mouse pointer (Figure 22.20). If you select **Yes**, click **NEXT** and proceed to Step 21. If you select **No**, click **NEXT** and proceed to Step 22. Figure 22.19 The Extra Keyboard Help page.

sibility Wizard	×
tra Keyboard Help Some programs offer ToolTip and other instructions that help you use the keyboard to complete tasks.	
Il you do not use a mouse, you may want extra keyboard help.	
Do you want estra keyboard help to be displayed whenever it is available?	
C Yes	
C Ng	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> (ancel
	tra Keyboard Help Some programs offer ToolTip and other instructions that help you use the keyboard to complete tasks. If you do not use a mouse, you may want extra keyboard help. Do you want extra keyboard help to be displayed whenever it is available? Yes Mo

Figure 22.20 The MouseKeys page.

Accessibility Wizard	×
MouseKeys You can use your keyboard instead of a mouse, to m	rove the mouse pointer.
If you have difficulty using a mouse, you can use you	e numeric keypad instead.
On the numeric keypad	
To move the mouse pointer, press the arrow keys. To click, press 5. To double-click, press +. To "hold down" the mouse button, press INS. To release the mouse button, press DEL.	
Do you want to use your numeric keypad instead of t	he mouse?
(* Vec	
C Ng	
< 84	ack Next> Cancel

➤ STEP 21

When you enable MouseKeys, you are presented with the MouseKeys Settings page (Figure 22.21). The following options are available on this page:

- Use MouseKeys when NUM LOCK is: Deciding whether to use MouseKeys when NUM LOCK is on or off really comes down to how you normally use the numeric keypad. If you use it for data entry, you may want to have MouseKeys enabled when NUM LOCK is off. However, if you normally use the arrow keys, INS, and DEL, you may want to have MouseKeys enabled when NUM LOCK is on.
- **Pointer Speed**. Two options are available for the speed at which the pointer will move when controlled by MouseKeys: Top speed and Acceleration. Top speed is the setting for the fastest the cursor will move, and Acceleration is how fast the cursor will reach that speed.

Figure 22.21 The MouseKeys Settings page.

t options									
							- 1 -		
all ann mhan b	UNL DOX	in-	a F	2	0.0	a			
erveys when r	TOM COOK	F2.		<u></u>		ū.			
ed									
						_			
t	Low	1.1		- 7			High		
onc				-		_			
	Slow			1			Fast		
	is on when NI to have Mou eKeys when N ed	s on when NUM LDCK is to have MouseKeys on t eKeys when NUM LDCK ed	s on when NUM LDCK is on. If y to have MouseKeys on when N eKeys when NUM LDCK is: ed	s on when NUM LDCK is on. If you use to have MouseKeys on when NUM LDCK is:	s on when NUM LDCK is on the num to have MouseKeys on when NUM LDCK is of eKeys when NUM LDCK is: ed t Low t L	s on when NUM LDCK is on. If you use the numeric ket to have MouseKeys on when NUM LDCK is oft eKeys when NUM LDCK is:	s on when NUM LOOK is on If you use the numeric keypad to have MouseKeys on when NUM LOOK is oft eKeys when NUM LOOK is:	s on when NUM LOOK is on If you use the numeric keypad for data- to have MouseKeys on when NUM LOOK is oft. eKeys when NUM LOOK is:	eKeys when NUM LOCK is: I C Dit ed t Low , , , , , , , , High

➤ STEP 22

The Mouse Cursor page should look familiar to you if you completed the steps for the **I am blind or have difficulty seeing things on screen** option. Select the size and color of the mouse cursor that best suits your needs (Figure 22.22), and click **Next**. Three size choices are available:

- Regular
- Large
- Extra Large

Three color choices are available:

- White
- Black
- Inverting

Figure 22.22 The Mouse Cursor page.

Accessibility Wizerd Mouse Cursor You can choose the si	ze and color of ;	pour mouse cur	×
Select the mouse ours	or that is the size	e and color you	want:
	White	Black.	Inverting
Regular	₽I	₹Ţ	T
Large	₽I	ΝI	FI
Extra Large	ßI	►I	
		< <u>B</u> ar	ck <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

≻ STEP 23

The Mouse Button Settings page allows you to swap the functionality of the buttons depending on what hand you use the mouse with (Figure 22.23). Select an option, and click **NEXT**. Two options are available:

- Right-handed
 - Left button is used for normal select and normal drag
 - Right button is used for context menus and special drag.

- Left-handed
 - Left button is used for context menus and special drag
 - Right button is used for normal select and normal drag.

Figure 22.23 The Mouse Button Settings page.

You may want to configure	your mouse to work with the hand you p	vefer.
How do you prefer to use y	your mouse?	
Eight-handed	Left buttors	
C Left-handed	- Normal select - Normal drag	
	Right button:	
	 Context menu Special drag 	

➤ STEP 24

If the mouse pointer moves too slowly or quickly for you, it can be adjusted on the Mouse Speed page (Figure 22.24). To adjust the speed, move the slider until you are comfortable with the speed, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 28.

➤ STEP 25

Select I want to set administrative options (Figure 22.25), and click NEXT.

➤ STEP 26

It's possible that multiple users use the same computer. Some of those users may have certain accessibility options enabled that bother other users. If this is the case, you can disable certain accessibility options after the computer has been idle for a period of time you select (Figure 22.26). Make your choice, and click **NEXT**. The following accessibility options can be turned off:

Figure 22.24 The Mouse Speed page.

Accessibility Wizard	×
Mouse Speed You can change the speed	d of your mouse pointer.
If you have difficulty positio can adjust the speed of the	oning the mouse pointer to select items on the screen, you e pointer.
Mouse pointer speed	Slow Fast
	< <u>R</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

Figure 22.25 Selecting the I want to set administrative options option.

Accessibility Wizard	×
Set Wizard Options You can configure Windows for your vision, hearing, and mobility needs.	
Select the statements that apply to you:	
I am blind or have difficulty seeing things on screen	
I am geaf or have difficulty hearing sounds from the computer	
I have difficulty using the keyboard or mouse	
V I want to set administrative options	
Bestore Default Settings	
< Back Next >	Cancel

- StickyKeys
- FilterKeys (aka BounceKeys)
- ToggleKeys
- High Contrast features

Figure 22.26 The Set Automatic Timeouts page.

Accessibility Wizard			×
Set Automatic Timeouts You can set certain accessibility features to specified amount of time.	turn off if the compute	riside fora	
If more than one person uses this computer, accessibility settings automatically when you			
 Lum off StickyKeys, FilterKeys, ToggleK computer has been idle for 	eys, and High Contras	t leatures when t	he
5 rinutes			
Leave accessibility features on			
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>1</u>	ent>	Cancel

≻ STEP 27

You can also make the accessibility settings apply to all new users or only the current user profile (Figure 22.27). Select **Yes** or **No**, and click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 28

You have the option of saving the accessibility options you have made to a file so that you can transport the file to other computers instead of having to run the wizard each time you switch computers (Figure 22.28). The file defaults to the name MySettings.acw. After making your choice, click **NEXT**. To use the file, you simply transport it to a new computer and double-click it from within Windows Explorer. Figure 22.27 The Default Accessibility Settings page.

Accessibility Wizard	×
Default Accessibility Settings You can make your accessibility settings the	default for new users.
Do you want to make these settings the defa	u#?
C Yes	
Use my accessibility settings when I log o accounts.	on, and apply my settings to new user
Save these settings for the current user p	orofile only.
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

Figure 22.28 The Save Settings to File page.

Accessibility Wizard	×
Save Settings to File You can apply these accessibility settings t	o another computer.
You can save the new settings to a file. Yo to configure them the same way you have a	
Save Settings	
	<back nent=""> Cancel</back>

➤ STEP 29

The Completing the Accessibility Wizard page will display a summary of what was completed (Figure 22.29). This page is also displayed if you have double-clicked the MySettings.acw file discussed in Step 28. Click **FINISH** to close the Accessibility Wizard.

Figure 22.29 Completing the Accessibility Wizard page.



Summary

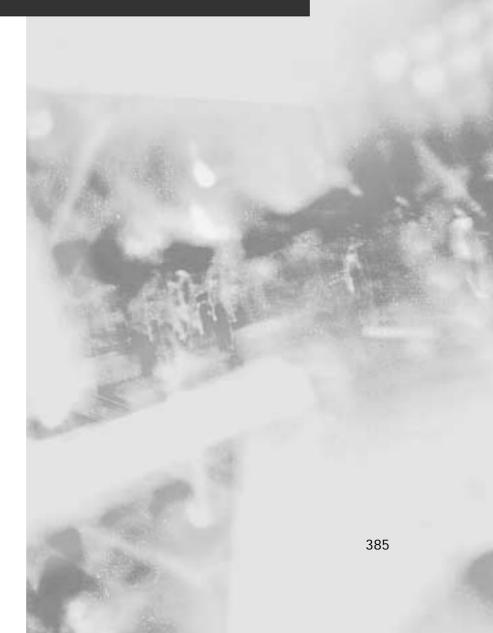
The Accessibility Wizard allows you to configure several different features in order for everyone to have a pleasant computing experience. The wizard can configure options for people who are blind or have difficulty seeing things on the computer screen, for people who are deaf or have difficulty hearing sounds from the computer, and for people who have difficulty using the keyboard or mouse. A fourth option is available for the Administrator to set limitations on accessibility options.

Depending on the option chosen (blind, deaf, or motion difficulty), the options shown in the wizard are different. For example, if a person has a hard time seeing the screen, there is no reason to adjust whether the mouse operates for a left-handed or right-handed person.

It is possible for users to save their unique settings to a file (.acw) so they can easily transport their settings to other computers they may use without having to rerun the Accessibility Wizard each time. They can simply doubleclick on the file to import their unique settings to the system they are using.

Chapter 23

Send Fax Wizard



Introduction

To make sending faxes easier, Windows 2000 includes the Send Fax Wizard. The feature is robust and easy to use. By the end of this chapter, you will have sent your first fax from a Windows 2000 machine.

Before You Begin

Sending a fax from Windows 2000 is not a difficult task, especially with the help of the Send Fax Wizard. Any user can use the wizard to send a text document or graphic image as a fax.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Send Fax Wizard is available in both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. The purpose of the wizard is to easily allow anyone to send a fax from any print-enabled application on his or her system.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

In order to be able to use the Send Fax Wizard, you will need the following:

- A fax modem
- A telephone line for the fax modem
- A fax printer device

The Send Fax Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Send Fax Wizard.

- Open any Windows application that has a Print command, such as WordPad. (Start/Programs/Accessories/WordPad).
- Select **Print** from the File menu.
- Double-click the Fax printer (Figure 23.1).

NOTE

The Send Fax Wizard can also be started by selecting Start/Programs/Accessories/Communications/Fax/Send Cover Page Fax; however, it will send only a cover page and nothing else. **Figure 23.1** Selecting the Fax Printer to double-click and start the Send Fax Wizard.

Print	2
General Fax Options	
Select Printer	
i 🔄 🛸 🐠	
Add Printer Canon Fat Bubble-J	
Statuz Ready	E Print to file
Location:	Find Printer.
Comment	ring rinse.
Page Range	
(⊂ Aj	Number of gopies: 1 🚊
O Selection O Equient Repr	
C Pages: 1-65535	
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	11 22 30
B	nt Cancel Apply
	Carcel Stole

≻ STEP 2

Click Next at the Send Fax Wizard welcome page (Figure 23.2).

➤ STEP 3

The first time you use the Send Fax Wizard, you are presented with the option to edit your user information or keep the current user information (Figure 23.3). If you select **Edit the user information now**, click **OK**, and proceed to Step 4. If you select **Keep the current user information**, click **OK**, and proceed to Step 5.

≻ STEP 4

Edit the desired information presented on the User Information tab, and click $O\kappa$ (Figure 23.4).

The following selections are available on the User Information tab:

- Your full name
- Fax number
- E-mail address

- Title
- Company
- Office location
- Department
- Home phone
- Work phone
- Address
- Billing code

Figure 23.2 The Send Fax Wizard welcome page.



Figure 23.3 Prompt to edit or keep the current user information.



Figure 23.4 Editing data on the User Information tab of Fax Properties.

🥩 Fax Propertie	:			2 ×
User Information	Cover Pages	Status Monits	or Advanced D	ptions
This into	mation will be u	sed to fill in the	e fielde on your co	over page.
Your full parter	Stace Cunning	ghan		
Eax number:				
E-mail address:				
∐ide:		Compa	ny:	
Office location:		Depart	ment:	
Home phone:		<u>₩</u> ark.p	hone:	
Addgess:				
		_	_	_
Billing code:				_
		OK	Cancel	<u>Antiy</u>

➤ STEP 5

The Recipient and Dialing Information page allows you to enter a name in the To: dialog box, or choose an entry from your Address Book by clicking ADDRESS BOOK (Figure 23.5). This page also allows you to select to use dialing rules and to pick which dialing rule to use by clicking DIALING RULES. This button is not selectable if you have not checked the "Use dialing rules:" box. Enter the name of the person you want to send the fax to, the fax number, click **ADD**, click **NEXT**, and proceed to Step 8. If you want to select an entry in your Address Book, click **ADDRESS BOOK** and proceed to Step 6.

➤ STEP 6

Select a name in the left pane and click **To** (Figure 23.6). Click **Ok** to return to the Recipient and Dialing Information page where you will see the chosen recipient indicated on that page. Click **NEXT** on the Recipient and Dialing Information page, and proceed to Step 8.

If the recipient's name you want to fax is not available in your address book, you can add it by clicking **New Contact** to create the entry.

Figure 23.5 The Recipient and Dialing Information page.

Iα		Addregs Boo
Eax Number ()	
		7
If the computer should	determine how to dial the fax number	et, check Use dialing rules.
Use dialing rules:	Ny Location	Disting Role
Type each recipient's i	information above and then click Ad	d

Figure 23.6 Selecting an existing name from the Address Book.

Address Book			? ×
Type name or select from list:			
Find	1		
Contacts	Ĩ	Message Recipients:	
Name A E-Mail A	Tg⇒		
DW Selman		200 reven medvave	_
Its Robert Mcguade			
× ×	1		
New Contact Properties	1		
OK		Cancel	
0.0			

➤ STEP 7

After clicking **New Contact** in Step 6, you are offered several tabs in which to input the data for the new contact (Figure 23.7).

- Name
- Home
- Business
- Personal
- Other
- NetMeeting
- Digital IDs

Once you have completed the information you want for the new contact, click OK to return to the Address Book. Highlight the new name, and click To to add the new name to the Message Recipient list. Click OK to return to the Recipient and Dialing Information page. Click NEXT.

Figure 23.7 Properties page for creating a new contact in the Address Book.

Properties	2 🗙
Name Home Business Personal Other NetMeeting Digital IDs	
Enter name and e-mail information about this contact here.	
Eist Nigdle: Last	
E-Mail Addresser:	Add Edit Berrove Get as Defash
Send E-Mail yoing plain text only.	K Cancel

≻ STEP 8

After selecting the recipient and dialing information, the wizard prompts you to include a cover page (Figure 23.8). You do not have to add a cover page if you do not want to. To include a cover page, place a check mark in the box located to the left of **Include a cover page**. If you do decide to use a cover page, you must pick one of the available templates to use. The available templates include:

- confdent (Confidential)
- fyi (For Your Information)
- generic (Generic)
- urgent (Urgent)

You may also include a **Subject line** and **Note** to be sent on the cover page by filling in the appropriate dialog box on the Adding a Cover Page screen. Click **NEXT** after entering your choice.

Figure 23.8 The Adding a Cover Page page.

Send Fax Wizard	×
Adding a Cover Page You can add a cover page to your document and include a note for the recipient.	S#
Include a cover page. Use the following template:	
Cover page template: 101	
Subject line:	
Info for you about a new book.	
Ngte:	
Thought you might be interested in this new book about Windows 2000 Wizards	
< Back Newt >	Cancel

≻ STEP 9

Your fax does not have to be sent immediately if you do not want it to be. The Scheduling Transmission page allows you to specify the time to send the fax. There are three choices:

• Now. Send the fax as soon as the wizard is completed.

- When discount rates apply. A discount rate can be set from the Fax Service Management Console in Control Panel. The setting contains the start time and stop time of the discount rate period. When this choice is selected, the fax will be sent during the time period set for discount rates.
- **Specific time in the next 24 hours**. You can select a time during the next 24 hours for the fax to be sent.

You may also include a billing code on the Scheduling Transmission page (Figure 23.9). The billing code appears in the fax event log for all outbound faxes, and can be used to assign costs of faxing to a specific account for billing purposes.

Figure 23.9 The Scheduling Transmission page.

When	loyou want to send this fax?		
	en giscount rates apply		
C Sp	cilic time in the next 24 hours	: 12:00 AM	
You m	y include a billing code.		
Billing	ode (optional)		

➤ STEP 10

The Completing the Send Fax Wizard page will display a summary of what was completed (Figure 23.10). Click **FINISH** to close the Send Fax Wizard. Be sure to leave your computer on if the fax is being sent from it!

Figure 23.10 Completing the Send Fax Wizard page.



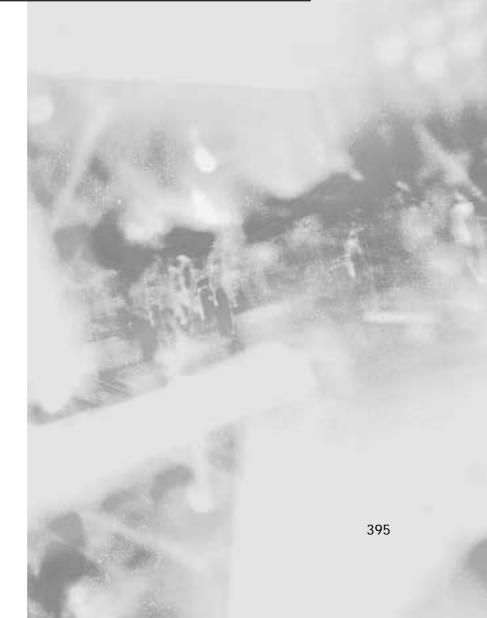
Summary

The Send Fax Wizard is available in both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. It prepares a fax to be sent from any Windows application that has a Print command available. The Send Fax Wizard can also be started from the Fax menu using the Send Cover Page Fax; how-ever, it will only send the cover page. In order to use the Send Fax Wizard, you need a fax modem, a telephone line for the fax modem, and a fax printer. Double-clicking the fax printer after selecting Print in an application starts the wizard.

The wizard allows you to pick the recipients and dialing information applicable to sending the fax. If no recipients are in your address book, you may add them from within the wizard. After selecting the recipients and dialing information, you are prompted to include a cover page. You do not have to include a cover page if you do not elect to do so; however, if you do add a cover page, you can input a subject line and note to the recipient(s). The next step in the wizard is to determine when the fax is to be sent. You can send it immediately, during a discount rate period, or some other time within the next 24 hours you select. After clicking FINISH in the wizard, the fax is queued to be sent out. Be sure to leave the computer on that has the fax modem attached to it, or the fax will not be sent.

Chapter 24

Backup and Recovery Wizards



Introduction

Systems management is a tedious and extensive task. Windows 2000 offers a number of tools and wizards to make this administrative process easier. By the end of this chapter, you will be familiar with the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools.

Before You Begin

Before beginning, you should first determine the media to which you will be backing up the data. The backup utility in Windows 2000 supports backups to various types of media, including logical drives, removable disks, and even writable CDs. In order to use a tape storage device with the backup utility, you must first ensure that you have installed Remote Storage, which is responsible for managing the storage devices and accompanying media.

Additionally, you will need to log on to the system using an account that has Administrator or Backup Operator privileges; otherwise, you will be unable to back up the Active Directory.

The Purposes of these Wizards

These wizards help protect data from accidental loss. The Backup and Restore Wizards provide a convenient method for backing up and restoring data, as well as the Distributed Services such as Active Directory, Certificate Server, and File Replication Service.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

Before performing the following tasks, ensure you have the following information:

• Location to store backed up data

Backup Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools.

• From the **Start** menu, open **Programs**, **Accessories**, and click **Backup**.

≻ Step 2

The Welcome to the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools screen (Figure 24.1) has three choices:

- **Backup Wizard.** This starts the Backup Wizard, which steps you through the backup process.
- **Restore Wizard.** This starts the Restore Wizard, which steps you through the restore process.
- **Emergency Repair Disk.** This creates an Emergency Repair Disk, which saves information about your system settings and system files. You should perform this task whenever changes are made to the system.

Figure 24.1 The Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools welcome page.



➤ STEP 3

To start the Backup Wizard (Figure 24.2), click **BACKUP WIZARD**. Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.2 The Backup Wizard welcome page.



≻ STEP 4

There are a few options to choose from, depending on the specific data you want to back up (Figure 24.3).

- Select **Back up everything on my computer** to quickly archive all the data stored on the system. Proceed to Step 6.
- Select Back up selected files, drives, or network data to selectively choose the data to back up.
- Select Only back up the System State data to archive the Windows 2000 system components such as the registry, Component Services Class Registration database, system startup files, Certificate Services database, Active Directory, SYSVOL folder, and cluster service information. Proceed to Step 6.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

≻ STEP 5

If you elected to back up selected data, the Items to Back Up page (Figure 24.4) provides a simple point-and-click method for selecting the data to back up.

• Click in the available boxes to select the data you want to back up, and click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.3 What to Back Up page.

Backup Wizard	×
What to Back Up You can specify the items you want to back up.	1
Select what you want to back up:	
Back up everything on my computer	
C Back up selected files, drives, or network data	
C Only back up the System State data	
<back next=""> Cance</back>	н

Figure 24.4 Items to Back Up page.

Backup Wizard Items to Back Up You can back up any combination	of drives, folders, or files.		¤
Click to select the check box n What to back up:	ent to any drive, folder, or file	that you want to b	back up.
Desktop My Computer M y Computer A: P C	Name	Comment	
	< Back	Next>	Cancel

NOTE

A blue check mark indicates that everything within that folder or drive will be backed up; whereas a gray check mark indicates that only part of the contents will be backed up.

≻ STEP 6

Select the media type and destination media or filename to store the backed-up data (Figure 24.5).

- Select from the **Backup media type:** the destination type for your backup.
- Enter a location to store the backup in the Backup media or file name: box. In addition, you may click BROWSE to locate the destination.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.5 Where to Store the Backup page.

ackup Wizard		×
Where to Store the Backup Your backed-up data is stored on the me	dia in the destination,	you opecity.
Choose a media type for your backup, an the backup data	d then enter the nam	e of the media to receive
Backup media type:		
File	-]
Backup media or file name:		
C:\Backup.bkf		Biowae
	< Back	Next> Cancel

NOTE

Only *File* will be available from the Backup media type if no other removable storage is installed.

≻ STEP 7

You have finished setting up the system to perform a backup, and the Completing the Backup Wizard page (Figure 24.6) displays a summary of the backup settings. However, several more options can still be set. Click **ADVANCED** to specify additional backup options.

Figure 24.6 Completing the Backup Wizard page.

Backup Wizard		×	
	Completing the Backup Wizard		
		accessfully completed the Backup wizard. You tollowing settings:	
	Description: Set created 1/19/2000 at 6:09 PM		
	What	Back up all files on my local drive(s)	
	Media type:	File	
	Media:	C:\Backup.bkf	
	When:	Now	
	How:	Verify off, Do not use hardware compression, Append to my media	
	To start the	backup, click Finish.	
	To specify a Click Advan	dottional backup options, Advanced	
		< Back Finish Cancel	

➤ STEP 8

Select the type of backup to perform from the following choices (Figure 24.7):

- **Normal**. This will copy all the selected files and clear the archive attribute.
- **Copy**. This will copy all selected files, but will not clear the archive attribute.

- **Incremental**. This will back up all selected files, but only those that have been created or changed since the last normal or incremental backup, and clears the archive attribute.
- **Differential**. This will back up all selected files created or changed since the last normal or incremental backup, but it does not clear the archive attribute.
- **Daily**. This will copy all the selected files that have changed only on the day the backup is performed, and it does not clear the archive attribute.

Check **Backup migrated Remote Storage data** to back up data migrated to Remote Storage. Remote Storage is used to extend disk space. This feature can be used to free space on your primary hard disk by copying infrequently used files on the local volumes to a tape library when the primary hard disks drop below a specified level. Click **Next** to continue.

NOTE

The archive attribute (also called archive bit) is associated with a file and is used to indicate whether the file has been backed up since its last change.

Figure 24.7 Type of Backup page.

Backup Wizard		×
Type of Backup You can perform various types of backups,	depending on your needs.	ē
Select the type of backup operation to perform	OFTIE	
Normal	*	
Normal Copy Incremental Differential Dially		
Specify whether to back up contents of file migrated to Remote Storage.	s which have	
 Backup nigrated Remote Storage data 		
	<back next=""></back>	Cancel

≻ STEP 9

You may optionally select verification and compression to be performed on your backup (Figure 24.8).

- Select Verify data after backup to have the system run a check to ensure the integrity of the backed up data. Choosing this option will cause the backup process to take longer.
- Select Use hardware compression, if available to increase the amount of storage on the media.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.8 How to Back Up page.

Se	lect the checkbox for any option you want to use.
7	Verity data after backup
	Verification reads the backed-up data to verify its integrity. This step takes extra time, but verification helps ensure that your backup is successful.
Г	Use hardware concression, if available
	Hardware compression increases the available storage space on the backup media, which reduces storage costs. However, compressed backups can only be restored with drives that support compression.

➤ STEP 10

If the media already contains data from a previous backup, select the method to apply the current backup to the media (Figure 24.9).

- Select **Append this backup to the media** to write the backup without overwriting the existing media.
- Select Replace the data on the media with this backup to overwrite any existing data on the media. Choosing this option will also enable the check box to allow only the owner and the Administrator the ability to access the data on the media.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.9 Media Options page.

lithe	archive media altear	ly contains backu	ps	
	ppend this back up to			
CF	eplace the data on t	he media with this	backup	
	ur andeillen ausser an	d the Administrato	access to the	
	kup data and to any	backups append	ed to fric media.	

➤ STEP 11

This step allows you to optionally enter a label for the backup and the media being used, or you may accept the defaults (Figure 24.10).

- Enter a name for the backup in the **Backup label** box, or accept the default label.
- Enter a name for the media in the **Media label** box, or accept the default label.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

≻ STEP 12

Next, select when you want to run the backup. You may run the backup immediately, or schedule a backup to run later (Figure 24.11).

- Select **Now** to run the backup immediately.
- Select Later to schedule the backup for a later time. Enter a name for the Job in the Job name box, and click Set Schedule to open the Task Scheduler, which provides you with many scheduling options. Choosing to run the backup later will prompt you to enter a password for a domain Administrator (Figure 24.12).
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.10 Backup Label page.

ckup Wizard		E
Backup Label You need a label for the backup and the r	nedia you are using.	1
Accept the default labels shown, or type a	different label.	
Backup label:		
Set created 1/19/2000 at 6:09 PM		
If the media is blank, or its data is replaced	d, use this label instead.	
Media label:		
Media created 1/19/2000 at 6:08 PM		
	< Back Next >	Cancel
	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 24.11 When to Back Up page.

Backup Wizard 🛛 🕅 🕅
When to Back Up You can run the backup now or schedule it for later.
To run the backup immediately, click Now. To schedule the backup for a later time, click Later, and then complete the Schedule entry.
C Now
F Later
Schedule entry
Job name: My Backup
Start date: Wednesday, January 19, 2000 at 6:13 PM
Set Schedule
<back next=""> Cancel</back>

Figure 24.12 Set Account Information dialog box.

Set Account Information
Run as: DOMAINVAdministrator
Password:
Confirm password:
OK Cancel

NOTE

The Task Scheduler is a separate utility that provides a method to easily schedule a script, program, or document to be run at a specified time. Task Scheduler starts and runs in the background each time Windows 2000 is started. It can be opened from the Control Panel and can be used to schedule a task to run daily, weekly, monthly, or at specific times; change the schedule for a task; stop a scheduled task; and customize how a task runs at a scheduled time.

➤ STEP 13

You have finished configuring the backup (Figure 24.13). Notice that the Advanced option no longer appears as did previously in Step 7. Click **FINISH**. If the backup was scheduled to run now, you will immediately see the Backup Progress box (Figure 24.14), which indicates the status and other information pertaining to the backup.

➤ STEP 14

After the backup has completed, the box shown in Figure 24.15 appears, indicating the backup is complete. Click **CLOSE** to close the box, or click **REPORT** to view a log, which contains information about the backup (Figure 24.16).



Figure 24.13 Completing the Backup Wizard page.

Figure 24.14 Backup Progress status box.

Backup Progre	111	? ×
	0	Cancel
Device:	System State	
Media name:	Media created 1/19/20	100 at 6:28 PM
Status:	Backing up files from d	sk
Progress:		
	Elapsed:	Estimated remaining:
Time:	42 sec.	3 min., 10 sec.
Processing	System State\INNT\	system32\dhcpsnap.dll
	Processed:	Estimated
Files:	430	1,788
Bytes:	56,766,456	314,164,057

Figure 24.15 Backup Progress completion box.

Backup Progre		7 ×
The backup is	complete.	Close
To see a report the backup, cli	with detailed information a ok Report.	Report
Media name:	Media created 1/19/20	00 at 6:28 PM
Status:	Completed	
	Elapsed:	Estimated remaining:
Time:	3 min., 27 sec.	
	Processed:	Estimated
Files:	1.788	1,788
Bytez:	259,791,091	335,423,731

Figure 24.16 A report is maintained containing information about each backup performed.



Restore Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools. From the **Start** menu, open **Programs**, **Accessories**, and click **Backup**.

➤ STEP 2

The Welcome to the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools screen, shown earlier in Figure 24.1, appears. Click **Restore Wizard** to open the Welcome to the Restore Wizard page (Figure 24.17), and click **Next** to continue.

Figure 24.17 The Restore Wizard welcome page.



➤ STEP 3

The system catalogs and displays any backups that were previously conducted.

- Choose from the available backups, and click in the available boxes (Figure 24.18) to select the specific data you want to restore.
- To specify a media source that has not been already cataloged, select **Import File** to open the Backup File Name box (Figure 24.19), and enter the location of the media.
- Click **NEXT** to continue.

Figure 24.18 What to Restore page.

Restore Witzerd What to Restore You can restore any combination of drives, folders, or files.	¤
Click to select the check box next to any drive, folder, or file that you want to restore.	Import File
Media created 1/13/2000 at 6:28 E Media created 1/13/2000 at 6:39 F Documents and Settings Administrator.SERVER My Documents My Documents My Documents Memos	1 1/19/200
<back next=""></back>	Cancel

NOTE

To restore the System State data, see the Getting Authoritative sidebar.

Figure 24.19 Backup File Name dialog box.



For IT Professionals

Getting Authoritative

A restore operation operates in *nonauthorativtive mode* and could possibly create the problem of the restored data being overwritten. If Active Directory is replicated across multiple domain controllers, an *authoritative restore* will need to be performed to ensure that data continues to be properly replicated.

Microsoft includes a command-line utility named *Ntdsutil*, which allows Active Directory objects to be marked for an authoritative restore. This process tags the data as being newer than any other data in the Active Directory replication system.

To authoritatively restore the distributed services, you will need to first restore the System State data from a previous backup using the following steps:

- 1. Restart the computer and click **F8** when the boot loader appears.
- 2. Select **Directory Services Restore Mode** and click **ENTER** twice.
- 3. Windows will start in safe mode after logging on.
- 4. Open Backup from the System Tools folder, and select Restore Wizard.
- 5. Select the backed up data containing the System State. (You may close and restart your computer after the restore, if you only want to nonauthoritatively restore your System State data.)
- 6. Once the restore is complete, enter **ntdsutil** at the command prompt.
- 7. Enter **authoritative restore** from the ntdsutil: prompt, and click ENTER.
- 8. From the authoritative restore: prompt, enter a command to restore the selected information. For example, to restore the marketing organizational unit in the domain.com domain, enter restore subtree OU=marketing, DC=domain, DC=com, and click ENTER.
- 9. Once the restore is complete, restart the computer.

≻ STEP 4

You have finished setting up the system to perform a restore, and the Completing the Restore Wizard page (Figure 24.20) displays a summary of the restore settings. However, several more options can still be set. Click **ADVANCED** to specify additional restore options.

Figure 24.20 Completing the Restore Wizard page.

Restore Wizard	×
	Completing the Restore Wizard
	You have successfully completed the Restore wizard. You specified the following settings:
	Restore from: File
	Media: Media created 1/19/2000 at 6:39 PM
	Restore to: Driginal locations.
	Existing files: Do not replace.
	To close this wizard and start the restore, click Finish.
	To specify additional options, click Advanced.
	< Back Finish Cancel

≻ STEP 5

Choose the destination for the restored data (Figure 24.21), and click **NEXT** to continue. You may choose from the following options:

- **Original location.** This choice will restore the backed-up data to the original location from where it was backed up.
- Alternate location. This choice allows you to browse to a different location to restore the backed-up data.
- **Single folder.** This choice allows you to restore the entire contents of a backup into a single folder.

≻ STEP 6

Select one of the available options to specify the action to be taken when restoring files that already exist on the restore destination (Figure 24.22), and click **NEXT** to continue. Figure 24.21 Where to Restore page.

Restore Wizard	×
Where to Rectore The relected files and folders are restored to the destination you specify.	đ
Select a destination for the restored files and folders. Restore files to:	
Alternate location Original location Alternate location Single folder Browse	
< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 24.22 How to Restore page.

Heatone Without How to Restore You can choose how you want to restore files that are already on disk.	
When restoring files that already exist:	
Do not replace the file on my disk (recommended)	
C Replace the file on disk only if it is older than the backup copy	
Always replace the file on disk	
<back next=""></back>	Cancel

≻ STEP 7

Choose any of the available options to optionally restore security or special system files (Figure 24.23). Figure 24.23 Advanced Restore Options page.

Restore Wizard 🛛 🕅
Advanced Restore Options You can choose to restore security or special system files.
Select the special restore options you want to use:
P Restore security
Restore Removable Storage database
Restore junction points, not the folders and file data they reference
< Back Next> Cancel

- Select **Restore security** to restore the security settings for each file and folder. This includes permissions, audit entries, and ownership information.
- Select Restore Removable Storage database to restore the removable storage database stored in the *systemroot*\system32\ntmsdata. Do not select this option if you are not using removable storage.
- Select Restore junction points, not the folders and file data they reference to restore junction points but not the data that the junction points point to.

NOTE

A *junction point* is a physical location on a hard disk that points to data located at another location on the hard disk or another storage device.

≻ STEP 8

You have finished configuring the restore operation (Figure 24.24). Notice that the Advanced option no longer appears as did previously in Step 4. Click **FINISH.** You will immediately see the restore progress box (Figure 24.25), which indicates the status and other information pertaining to the restore.



Figure 24.24 Completing the Restore Wizard page.

Figure 24.25 Restore Progress status box.

Restore Progre	*** ? ×
7	Cancel
Device:	D:
Media name:	Media created 1/19/2000 at 6:39 PM
Status:	Restoring files to disk
Progress	
Time:	Elepsed:
Processing	D:
	Processed
Files:	0
Bytes:	0

≻ STEP 9

After the restore has completed, the box shown in Figure 24.26 appears, indicating the backup is complete. Click **CLOSE** to close the box, or click **REPORT** to view a log, which contains information about the restore.

Figure 24.26 Restore Progress completion box.

Restore Progr	065	7 X
The restore is a	complete.	Close
To see a report the restore, clic	t with detailed information about ik Report.	Report
Media name:	Media created 1/19/2000 at 6:	39 PM
Status:	Completed	
Time	Elapsed:	
Files:	Processed:	
Bytes:	1,524	

Emergency Repair Disk Wizard

≻ STEP 1

Start the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools. From the **Start** menu, open **Programs**, **Accessories**, and click **Backup**.

≻ STEP 2

The Welcome to the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools screen, shown earlier in Figure 24.1, appears. Click **Emergency Repair Disk**, and the dialog box shown in Figure 24.27 will prompt you to insert a blank, formatted floppy disk into the A drive.

Additionally, you may click the available check box to also back up the registry to the repair directory. Click $O\kappa$ to begin the process.





Summary

Windows 2000 finally includes a powerful and robust backup and recovery utility. Included are several wizards to assist in protecting your systems from the loss of data. From the main screen of the Windows 2000 Backup and Recovery Tools, three buttons provide access to wizards for backing up and restoring data, one of which includes an Emergency Repair Disk creation utility.

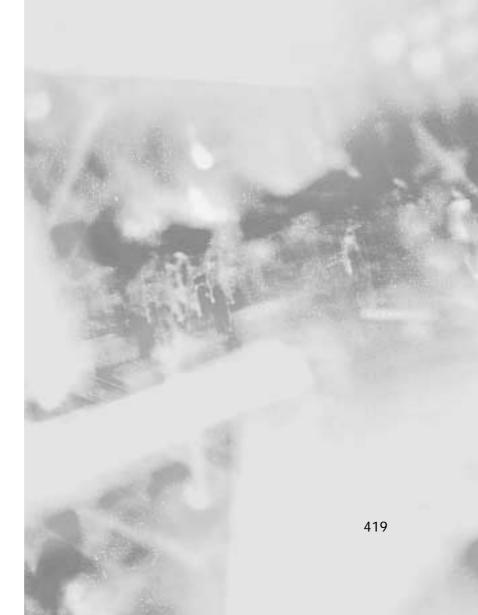
The Backup Wizard can be used to back up everything on the computer, selected data, or only the System State data. In addition, the backup utility supports backup to various types of media. The Backup Wizard can also be used to get a backup going in seconds without specifying advanced options, or additional options can easily be specified, which includes integration with the Windows 2000 Task Scheduler.

The Restore Wizard can be used to restore complete backup data files or only selected data. In addition, the Restore Wizard also supports various advanced functions such as the ability to choose the destination for the restored data other than the original location.

Finally, the ability to make an Emergency Repair Disk has been moved to this utility, providing a convenient method of keeping the repair disk up to date.

Chapter 25

Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard



Introduction

Every software vendor wants you to register the software you buy, and Microsoft is no exception. The registration wizard makes registration easy and quick. By the end of this chapter, you will have registered your copy of Windows 2000 with Microsoft.

Before You Begin

Using the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard sends information about you and possibly your system to Microsoft. Do not use the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard if you do not want to send information about yourself or your system to Microsoft.

NOTE

After registering your copy of Windows 2000, the following registry key is changed from 0 to 1:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\
Windows NT\CurrentVersion\RegDone
```

This key is checked by Windows Update to ensure you are allowed to download Windows 2000 updates.

The Purpose of this Wizard

The Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard is available to Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. It is used to register your copy of Windows 2000 with Microsoft. Registration ensures that you receive product support, product update information, and other benefits from Microsoft.

Information Needed to Work with this Wizard

To use the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard, you need the following:

- Modem or Internet connection
- Personal information to enter in the dialog boxes as prompted

The Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard

➤ STEP 1

Start the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard.

- Click Start and choose Run.
- Enter **regwiz** /**r** (Figure 25.1), and click **Ок**.

Figure 25.1 Starting the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard from the Run dialog box.

Run	2 ×
2	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or Internet resource, and Windows will open it for you.
Qpen:	reguiz /r
	OK Cancel Browse

➤ STEP 2

Click **NEXT** at the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard welcome page (Figure 25.2).

≻ STEP 3

The General Information page gives you information concerning what Microsoft will do with the information you submit, as well as where they will store the information (Figure 25.3). After reading the information, click **NEXT**.

➤ STEP 4

The Ownership Information page contains several items (Figure 25.4). Some organizations may have certain items they want in the dialog boxes located on this page, so ensure you follow local guidance. After inputting the following information, click **NEXT**.

- Home or Work (the location you are using the product)
- First name
- Middle initial

- Last name
- Company
- E-mail

Figure 25.2 The Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard welcome page.



Figure 25.3 The General Information page.

Registering your Microsoft Windows 2000 software helps Microsoft provide you with customer support and services.
Registration information:
The Registration wizard asks for your address and for information about the ownership and purchase of this product. If you choose to register, your responses will be made available to Microsoft and its subsidiaries.
You decide whether you want to share your information with our partner companies.
Microsoft uses your registration information to provide you with customer support and information about new products and services.
The Registration wizard also takes a quick inventory of your system, and then you decide whether or not you want to submit the inventory with your registration.
Submitting the inventory with your registration helps Microsoft give you better customer support and build better products.
Microsoft may process and store your registration information in the United States and in your country of residence or other countries.
and in your country of residence or other countries.

Figure 25.4 The Ownership Information page.

wnership Info	2000 Registration Wizard mation plan to use this software?
I am registerir	p this product to use at:
C Home	
Etst name:	Stace D
Last name:	Curningham
- Cgmpany:	SDC Consulting
E-mail	sdc@sdc.blosi.ms.us
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

➤ STEP 5

The Address and Telephone Number page contains several items (Figure 25.5). Some organizations may have certain items they want in the dialog boxes located on this page, so ensure you follow local guidance. After inputting the following information, click **NEXT**.

- Country/region
- Business address
- City
- State/province
- ZIP/Postal Code
- Telephone number

➤ STEP 6

The Business User Role page gives you the opportunity to tell Microsoft your position in the organization, and whether you want to receive offers from Microsoft's partners (Figure 25.6). After making your selections, click **NEXT**. The following are the choices available under Role:

- Senior IT Decision-maker
- IT Decision-maker

- IT Implementer
- Professional Developer
- Web Developer
- Other Developer
- Senior Business Decision-maker
- Line-of-Business Manager
- Advanced Business user
- Computing Technology Salesperson/Consultant

Figure 25.5 The Address and Telephone Number page.

Microsoft Windows 2000 R	egistration Wizard	
Address and Telephone Please provide your me	e Number aling address and telephone number.	
Country/region	United States of America	
Business giddress:	PD Box 5136	
Egy:	Biloei	
State/province:	MS	
ZIP/Postal Code:	39534	
Telephone number:	Agea Code: Phone: Egtension: 228 432-1699	
	< <u>B</u> ack Newt>	Cancel

≻ STEP 7

The System Inventory page displays information the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard has gathered about your system (Figure 25.7). After selecting **Yes** or **No** for sending the system inventory information to Microsoft, click **NEXT**.

≻ STEP 8

The Product Identification page displays the identification number assigned to your Windows 2000 system (Figure 25.8). Click **NEXT** to proceed to the next step. If you are connected to the Internet, the information will be sent to Microsoft. Proceed to Step 10.

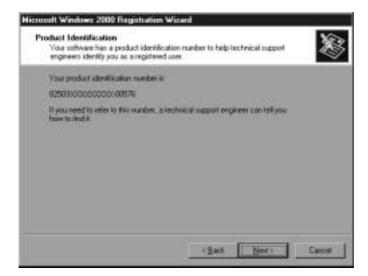
Figure 25.6 The Business User Role page.

Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard	
Business User Role How do you use computers and software in your job?	\$
Select the job category that best describes your organizational role in using computer and making software purchasing decisions.	1
Bole:	
Computing Technology Salesperson/Consultant	•
Decasionally, Microsoft allows carefully selected pathers to offer its customers produced and services by mail. Do you want to receive these offers?	ste
< Back Next > C	ancel

Figure 25.7 The System Inventory page.

System inventory.	System inventory.		
Device	Description A		
Processor Total RAM Total Disk Space Removable Media Display Pointing Device Network Network	AuthenticAMD, x86 Family 5 Model 6 Stepping 1 130612 KB 7589624 KB <none> Velocity 128 (nv3.tyt) 800 x 600 x 4194304K Microsoft Serial Mouse (semiouse.syt) 3Com EtherLink III Bus Master PCI Ethemet Adapter</none>		
Do you want to send th	is system inventory with your registration?		
C Yes C No			

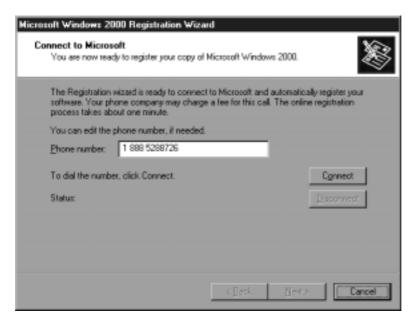
Figure 25.8 The Product Identification page.



≻ STEP 9

If you are not already connected to the Internet, the Connect to Microsoft page is displayed (Figure 25.9). A toll-free number is located in the Phone number dialog box. Click **CONNECT** to connect to Microsoft's registration server at MSN. After registration is complete, click **NEXT**.

Figure 25.9 The Connect to Microsoft page.



➤ Step 10

The Completing the Microsoft Windows 2000 Server Wizard page will display the registration was successful (Figure 25.10). Click **FINISH** to close the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard.

Figure 25.10 Completing the Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard page.



Summary

The Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration Wizard is available to both Windows 2000 Professional and Windows 2000 Server. It is used to register your copy of the operating system with Microsoft so that you can receive product support, product update information, and other benefits. Once your copy is registered, you can access the Windows Update site to retrieve operating system updates. To use the wizard, you must have a modem or Internet access. The wizard sends the requested information using either the existing Internet connection or the modem to dial a toll-free number. The information sent consists of name, address, company name, e-mail address, and the role of the registered user. Other information sent by the wizard includes system information, if you allow it, and whether you want to receive offers from Microsoft partners.

INDEX

3Com, 231

Α

Access control settings, 331 Accessibility options, 373, 379, 381, 383 Accessibility wizard, 361 information, 362 page, 383 preparation, 362 purpose, 362 steps, 362-383 Account name, 77. See also Login. Active Directory, 10, 31, 292, 394, 398 data storage, 116 domain controller, 54 installation, 39, 42 link, 39 objects, 300 removal, demotion process, 57 uninstallation, 54-58 utilities, 208 Active Directory Installation Wizard, 25, 36.41 information requirements, 43 preparation, 42-43 purpose, 42 usage, 43-53 Active Directory-integrated type, 116, 125 Active Directory-integrated zone, 117, 124 Active Directory Server, 5 ActiveX applets, 333 removal. 323 Add/Edit Connect actions. 274 Add New Hardware Wizard, 30 Add Printer wizard, 155 information requirements, 156 preparation, 156 purpose, 156 steps, 157-166 Add/Remove Hardware wizard, 221 information requirements, 222 preparation, 222 purpose, 222 steps, 222-243

Address and Telephone Number page, 423 Address Book, 391 Addresses. See Static address. field, 249 lease, 103 pool, 86 range, 109, 132 static range, 141 Administrative option, setting, 365 Administrator-defined programs/scripts, 289 Administrator privileges, 394 Administrators, control, 148 Advanced link. 39 Advanced parameters. See Optional advanced parameters. Advanced remote access options, configuration, 136 Allocation unit size, 317-318 Alternate location, 412 ApiMon, 208 APIPA. See Automatic Private IP Addressing. AppleTalk, 25 **Application Server link**, 39 Applications. See Certified applications; Planned applications; Ready applications. Archive attribute, 402 Archive bit, 402 ASP, 180 Auditing, 331 Authentication, 144 configuration, 138 methods, 139 protocols, 139 purposes, 275 Authentication Provider, 138 Auto-Applications, 279 Automatic IP addressing, 86 Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA), 15

В

Background picture modification, 349

selection. 352 Backup and Restore wizard information. 396 preparation, 396 purpose, 396 Backup Domain Controller (BDC), 5 Backup File Name, 409 Backup Operator privileges, 396 Backup Progress, 406 **Backup** wizard completion, 401 starting, 397 steps, 396-409 Backups, 395, 398. See also Copy backup; Daily backup; Data; Differential backup; Incremental backup; Normal backup; Registry. choice, 409 performing, 16, 17 running, 404 settings, 401 BACP. See Bandwidth Allocation Control Protocol. **Bandwidth Allocation Control Protocol** (BACP), 141 Bandwidth Allocation Protocol (BAP), 141 BAP. See Bandwidth Allocation Protocol. BDC. See Backup Domain Controller. Bitmap images, 280 Boot disks, 22 BounceKeys, 373, 381 Browser. See Clients: World Wide Web. Business User Role page, 423

С

C-SLIP. See Compressed Serial Line Internet Protocol.
CAL. See Client Access License.
Callback, 83 number, 83 usage, 84
Certificate Server, 396
Certificate Services, 194 database, 398
Certified applications, 9
CGI, 180
Child domain, 42

creation, 45, 59 Child objects, 306 Classic icons. 352 Cleaning-up activity, 335 Client Access License (CAL), 11, 12, 23 Client for Microsoft Networks, installation, 25 Client/server system, 279 Clients. See Remote clients. access, denying, 74 base, 4 browser, 179, 184 IP addresses, 105 name recognition, 4-5 subnet mask, 95 Cluster Service, 194 Cluster service information, 398 CMAK. See Connection Manager Administration Kit. Color choices. 369 scheme. 368 COM+, 198 Comment fields, 296 Company name, 427 network. 128. 247 **Component Services Class Registration** database, 398 Components adding, 196-200 choice, 12-13 dependencies, 196 installation/removal, 196 placement, 204 removal, 201-204 **Compressed Serial Line Internet Protocol** (C-SLIP), 251 Compression. See Disk; Files; Folders; Hardware; Software. Computers direct connection. 88-90 screen. 383 **Configure Youre Server Wizard**, 33 Connection Manager, 282, 285 **Connection Manager Administration Kit** (CMAK) wizard, 263

information requirements, 264 preparation, 264 purpose, 264 steps, 265-288 Connections, 12, 90, 91. See also Computers. acceptance. See Incoming connections. authentication, 139 device, 89 preference, selection, 71 service profile, 266 setup, 338 types, 255 usage, 81 Context menus, 354, 379 Copy backup, 401 Copy status, 212 Cover page, 392 addition, 394 Create A New Zone wizard, 113, 125 information requirements, 115 preparation, 114–115 purpose, 114 steps, 115-124 usage, 124 Create Multicast Scope wizard, 108-111 Create New Dfs Root wizard, 291 information requirements, 293 preparation, 292-293 purpose, 292 steps, 293-297 Create Partition wizard, 311 information requirements, 312 preparation, 312 purpose, 312 steps, 312-319 Create Scope wizard, steps, 95–105 Create Shared Folder wizard, 145 information requirements, 146-147 preparation, 146-147 purpose, 146 steps, 147-152 Create Shortcut wizard information, 344 preparation, 344 purpose, 344 steps, 345-348

Create Superscope wizard, steps, 105–107 Customizations removal, 349 selectoin, 354 Customize This Folder wizard information, 344 preparation, 344 purpose, 344 steps, 348–354

D

Daily backup, 402 Data backup, 398, 400 entry, 177 storage, 117 throughput, maximization, 87 verification. 403 Database files. location. 48 placement, 59 storage, location, 43 dcpromo, 43 DDNS. See Dynamic DNS. Default folder, 179 Default gateways, 100, 102 Default label, 404 Default name, 122 Default printer, 166 Default subnet mask. 98 Delegation capability, 307 Delegation of Control wizard, 299, 301 information requirements, 300 preparation, 300 purpose, 300 steps, 300-308 Demand-dial connections, 140 Demand-dial routers, 141 Demand dial routing, 138 Dependencies. See Components. Deployment tools, 216 Destination address. 80 Destination media, 400 Developers, 424 Device driver, 156 Dfs root, 294-296

creation, 297 DHCP. See Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. **Dial-in users** access, 84 connection optimization, 87 Dial-up account, 246 Dial-up clients, 100 Dial-up connection, 65, 73, 81, 128, 259, 264, 274 support, 137 Dial-up Connections folder, 66, 88, 90 Dial-up entry, 270 Dial-up modems, 62 connection, 248 Dial-up networking, 338. See also Distributed dial-up networking. Dial-up server, 84 Dial-up service lines/modems, 251 Dial-up telephone number, 246 Dial-up usage, 258 Dialing up. See Internet; Private network. Differential backup, 402 Digital IDs, 391 Direct cable connection, creation, 88 Direct connection. 274. See also Computers. **Directory Services Restore Mode**, 51 **Disconnect actions**, 278 running, 273 Discount rates, 393 Disk activities, 318 compression, 10 fields, 201 management, 319 mirroring, disabling, 16, 17 quotas, 10, 318 space, 194, 196, 201, 402 amount, 315 Disk Cleanup wizard, 340 information, 323 preparation, 322-323 purpose, 322-323 steps, 333-335 Display name, 62 Distributed dial-up networking, 134 **Distributed Services**, 394

Distribution files. 199. 236 media. 196 DNS. See Domain Name System. Domain Dfs root, creation, 294 Domain Name System (DNS), 15, 31, 113, 173. See also Dynamic DNS. address, 62, 71 availability, 50 installation, 39 Manager, 122, 124 name, 36. See also Full DNS name. opening, 115 server, 12, 100, 102, 114, 252, 270 information, origin, 272 zone creation, 115 Server address, 94 system removal, 54 Domain NetBIOS name, 48 Domain tree, 4, 42 creation, 45, 46, 59 forest, creation, 46 placement. See Forests. Domain/workgroup, choice, 12 Domains, 188. See also Child domain; Forests; Parent domain; Users. availability/reliability, 44 controller, 44, 48, 59, 117. See also Active Directory; Backup Domain Controller; Peer domain controller; Primary Domain Controller. addition. 42. 44 creation. 58 creation. 25 joining, 12 name. 170. See also Public domain name. entering, 34 registration. See Internet. object, 189 support, 10 Down-level server, 5 Drivers. See Software. software, 166 support, 227 Dumpel, 208 Dynamic DNS (DDNS), 114

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), 15, 31, 141. See also Multicast DHCP. client. 99. 102. 103 definition, 95 DHCP Locator. 208 installation. 39 manager, 104, 111 usage, 86, 129 **Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol** (DHCP) server, 86, 132, 141 addition. 95 management, 93 information requirements, 94–95 preparation, 94-95 wizard, purpose, 94 running, determination, 24 **Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol** (DHCP) Service, 94 Dynamic updates, 124

E

E-mail. See Electronic mail. Electronic mail (E-mail), 422. See also World Wide Web. account. See Internet. address, 62, 387, 427 entering, 76 options, 246 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD), 222, 244 Emergency Repair Disk, 397, 416–417 creation utility, 417 Encryption. See Files. End date, 329 End IP address, 94, 96, 108, 109 inserting, 133 End-user machines, 322 connection, 288 Environment configuration wizards, 343 ESD. See Electrostatic Discharge. EtherLink III ISA card, 231 Event log, exportation, 208 Event logging, 137, 142, 144 Event Viewer, 142 External web page, 66

F

FAT, 10, 317 partition, 11

creation. 312 FAT32, 10, 317 partition, 11 creation, 312 Fault-tolerance support, 116 Fax number, 386, 387, 389 Fax Service Management Console, 393 File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks, 84 installation, 25 property sheet, 87 File-level security, 10 File Replication Service, 394 File Server computer, 146 link, 39 File servers, 99 File Transfer Protocol (FTP) directory, 176 protocol, 170 root directory, 174 server, 170, 184-188, 191 servers, 322 site, 172-176 File Transfer Protocol (FTP) Site Creation wizard, 171-176 Filename, 118, 122, 400 appearance, 349, 360 Files. See Distribution. compression, 318, 333 configuration, 199 copying, 199, 401 creation, 118, 122 deletion, 334 encryption, 10, 318 level permission, 318 replication, 48 scheduled synchronization, 322 sharing, 87, 146 system, 174, 317 choice, 10-11 conversion, 42 usage, 118 viewing, 334 FilterKeys, 373, 381 Folders, 400, 412. See also System volume. comment, addition, 349, 351, 353 compression, 318

creation. 347 permissions, customization, 148 scheduled synchronization, 322 views, configuration, 344 Font size. 364 Forests, 4, 5, 42, 45 creation, 47. See also Domain tree. domain tree placement, 46-47 root domain, 59 system removal, 54 Forward lookup zones, 117. See also Secondary forward lookup zone. creation, 115 name, entering, 118 Found New Hardware Wizard, 26 FQDN. See Fully Qualified Domain Name. Free space, 315 FrontPage Server Extensions, 356 FTP. See File Transfer Protocol. Full control permission, 150 Full DNS name, entering, 43-45, 47, 58, 59 Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), 184 Fully qualified name, 269

G

Gateways. See Default gateways. General permissions, 306, 307 Granular permissions, 331 Granularity control, 308 Graphical User Interface (GUI), 23 Group Policy links, 304 objects, 48 Guest, 88, 91 selection, 89 GUI. See Graphical User Interface.

Η

Handshaking, 275 Hard disks, 402 partitioning, 10 Hardware activation, 239 autodetection, 225

compression, 403 device, 222, 229 documentation. 232 operation, 242 properties, 234 removal, 239-243, 241 requirements. See Windows 2000. software compatibility. See Windows 2000. type, 230 value parameters, 222 Hardware Compatibility List (HCL), 8, 227 HCL. See Hardware Compatibility List. Hierarchical tree structure, 42 High Contrast features, 381 HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE, 420 Home link, 39 Horizontal list, 356, 360 Host, 91 computer, 88 ID, 98 name, 61 resolution, 114 selection, 89 Host Header field, 178 HTML. See HyperText Markup Language. HTTP. See HyperText Transfer Protocol. HyperText Markup Language (HTML) template, choice/edit, 349-351, 360 HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP), 76, 170, 247 mail servers. 256

I

I386 directory, 21, 198
Icon size, 368
ICS. See Internet Connection Sharing.
Identification packets, 142
Idle time options, 331
IIS. See Internet Information Services.
IMAP. See Internet Message Access Protocol.
Incoming connections acceptance, 81–88 access, granting, 83
Incoming mail server, 256 Incremental backup, 402 Industry-standard protocol, 134 Information networking, 20 replication, 48 Information Technology (IT) advice. 411 Decision-maker. 423 Implementer, 424 InfoTip, 357 Input/Output (I/O) Port Range, 233 range, 233, 234 Installation partition, 22 Internet. 62. 164 access. 426 account. 77. 91. 247 connection. 250 signing/transfering, 68 address, 344 configuration page. See Local Area Network. connection, 248, 420, 424, 426 establishing, 64 dialing up, 68–78 domain name registration, 34 e-mail account, 74, 91 files, 333, 340 inbound/outbound mail servers, 247 mail server, 182 provider, 69 services, 170 settings, automatic configuration, 69 standards, 50 tutorial, 68 usage. See Private network. Internet Connection Sharing (ICS), enabling, 65, 66, 81 Internet Connection wizard, 78, 245 information requirements, 246-247 launching, 68 preparation, 246-248 purpose, 246 steps, 247-260 Internet Explorer, 68, 336, 341 properties, 247

Internet Information Services (IIS), 170 component, 198 Manager, 171, 184, 189 services, 178, 182 Web server, 184 Internet Information Services (IIS) wizard. 169 information requirements, 170-171 preparation, 170-171 purpose, 170 Internet mail, 256 account, 74, 255 connection, 62 Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP), 76.247 mail servers, 256 Internet Protocol (IP), 137 addressing. See Automatic IP addressing. configurations, 140 routing, 144 enabling, 140 Internet Protocol (IP) addresses, 14, 33, 62, 71, 91, 114, 178, 182, 252. See also Client: End IP address: Numerical IP address; Server; Start IP address; Static IP address. assignation, 86, 94, 132, 140 dynamic assignment, 31, 114 entering, 87, 102, 103 exclusion, 94 range, 94, 95, 112 application, 133 selection, 172 specification, 86, 143 Internet Server, 74 Internet Service Provider (ISP), 14, 15, 71, 247, 252, 258 account username/password, 253 connection, 62, 64 listing, 69 paramters, 246 telephone number, 250 usage, 134 InterNIC, 14, 15 Interoperability, 16 Interrupt Request (IRQ) values, 233, 236

Interrupt values, 227 Intranets, 164 IRQ. See Interrupt Request. ISA card. See EtherLink III ISA card. devices, 232 network adapter, 231 ISAPI applications, 180 extensions, 180 ISDN adapter, 128 ISP. See Internet Service Provider. IT. See Information Technology.

J

Java applets, 333 downloaded program files, removal, 323 JavaScript code, 180 Junction point, 414

Κ

Keyboard, functionality, 375 Keystrokes ignoring, 373, 374 repetition, 373 Kill, 208

L

L2TP. See Layer Two Tunneling Protocol. LAN. See Local Area Network. Layer Two Tunneling Protocol (L2TP), 78 LCP. See Link Control Protocol. Lease duration, 99 Licensing, 11-12. See also Per seat licensing; Per server licensing. agreement, 286 Line-of-Business Manager, 424 Link Control Protocol (LCP) extensions, 142, 251 List items, 356 List size, 357 Local Area Network (LAN), 246, 248 adapter, 128 connection, 246, 261

configuration, 249 environments, 74, 143 Internet configuration page, 73 Manager 2.x clients, 87 routing, 138 Local Area Network (LAN) connection, 62, 69,71 Local printer, 157 Location. See Alternate location; Original location; Physical location. Log errors, 142 Log files default location, 48 placement, 59 storage, location, 43 Logical connectino, 141 Logical subnets, 105 Login, 260 account name, 246 name. See User-provided login name. process, 251 Logon graphic image, 280 screen, 267 script, 251 Lookup zones, creation. See Forward lookup zones; Reverse lookup zones. Low-risk systems, upgrades, 4 LPT1, 158

Μ

Mail account, 77 name, combination, 258 username/password, 247 Mail administrator, 77 Mail message, 255 Mail server. See Incoming mail server; Internet; Internet Message Access Protocol; Outgoing mail server; Post Office Protocol. name, 62 type, 62 Management and Monitoring Tools, 195, 196. 201. 264 components, 202 MCIS membership, 277 MDHCP. See Multicast DHCP. Media type, 400

Member server, 54 system return, 57 Memory usage, minimization, 87 Microsoft applications, 209 Microsoft architecture, 156 Microsoft Internet Referral Service, 91 Microsoft Knowledge Base, 54, 364 Microsoft Magnifier, 364 Microsoft Management Console (MMC), 344, 356, 360 Microsoft Network (MSN), 426 Microsoft Windows 2000 Registration wizard. 419 information. 420 preparation, 420 purpose, 420 steps, 421-426 Mixed mode. 5 MMC. See Microsoft Management Console. Modems, 128, 233. See Dial-up modems. access. 426 connection, 64, 69, 246, 420 Mouse buttons settings, 378 Mouse cursor, 369 page, 377 size. selection. 377-378 Mouse pointers, 379 Mouse Speed page, 379 MouseKeys, 375 enabling, 377 usage, 377 MSN. See Microsoft Network. Multicast, 108 data, 109 Multicast DHCP (MDHCP), 108 Multicast scope, 108, 109, 111 creation, 94 Multimaster dynamic update, 116 Multimaster replication, 50 Multiport adapter, 128 Multiprotocol Internet services server, 191

Ν

Name. See Account name; Default name; Display name; Domain Name System; Domain NetBIOS name; Host; Mail server; New Domain Name; Public

domain name; Share; UNC name; User account. entering, 327, 347. See also Domain; Full DNS name. resolution. 103. See also TCP/IP. Name Server (NS), 122 Namespace treee, 42 Naming conventions, 187 Native mode, 5 NDIS. See Network Driver Interface Specification. NetBEUI. 25 NetBIOS name, 103. See also Domain NetBIOS name. configuration, 48 NetMeeting, 391 Network, 108. See also Company. adapter, 236, 241. See also ISA. applications, 87 card, detection, 24 configuration, 246 information, 249 connection, 337. See also Private network. type, 80, 82 credentials, 43 failure. 292 ID, 98, 115, 120 print device, 156 printer, 162-166. See also Shared network printer. shares, 322, 323, 337, 340, 341 traffic, 137 Network Administrator, 246, 249, 258, 260 Network Connection Type, 88 Network Connection wizard, 61, 78, 88, 91 information requirements, 62 launching, 63-64 preparation, 62 usage, 63-90 Network Connections folder, 88, 90 Network Driver Interface Specification (NDIS), 128 Network Interface Card (NIC), 62, 128, 246 Network Monitor tools, 195 Networked printer, 159 Networking, 13–15. See also Information.

components, configuration/selection, 84 link, 39 problems, 117 properties, 84 New Dfs Root Wizard, 292, 294 New Domain Name, 47 New Domain wizard, 188-191 New Multicast Scope wizard, 108, 111 New Scope Wizard, 96, 100 New SMTP Virtual Server wizard, 182-184. 189 New Superscope wizard, 105, 106 New Taskpad View wizard information. 344 preparation, 344 purpose, 344 steps, 354-359 New Zone Wizard, 115, 116 completion, 122 NIC. See Network Interface Card. NNTP Service, 198 Nodes, 14, 78 Non-Microsoft DNS servers. 50 Non-Plug and Play device, adding, 228-239 Non-Plug and Play printers, 159 Non-Windows 2000 systems, 266 Normal backup, 401 Notepad, 352 NS. See Name Server. Ntdsutil.exe utility, usage, 54 NTFS, 10, 11, 317, 320 options, 152 partition, 10, 11 creation, 312 permissions, 150, 152, 176 settings, 153 security, 148 usage, 315, 318 version, 42 volumes, 316 write permissions, 176 NTFS file system, 175 security, 147 models, 146 Null modem cable, 89

NUM LOCK, 377 Numerical IP address, 80

0

Offline files, 322, 333 elimination, 340 enabling, 323 removal, 322–323 On-demand dialing, 66, 81 Operating system, 50 components, 194 Optional advanced parameters, 250–260 Organizational Unit (OU), 4, 300 Original location, 412 OU. See Organizational Unit. Outgoing mail server, 256 Outgoing messages, 76 Owner options, 331

Ρ

Parameters requirements, 233 Parent domain, 42, 45 field. 102 Partition. 43. 315. See also FAT: FAT32: NTFS. formatting, 317 installation, 23 Partitioning. See Hard disks. Password, 246. See also Internet Service Provider; Mail account. authentication, 78 check box, 77 choice, 24 combination, 258 entering, 24, 44, 46, 73, 83, 258, 327. See also Shared secret password. field, 259 PDC. See Primary Domain Controller. Peer domain controller, 42 Per seat licensing, 11, 23 Per server licensing, 11-12, 23 selection, 23 Permissions. See Full control permission; General permissions; NTFS; Userlevel permissions; Users. allowance, 152

compatibility. See Pre-Windows 2000 servers: Windows 2000. customization, 149. See also Folders; Share. models. 148 page, 306, 308 sets, 149 setting, 136, 180, 331 Personal information, 420 Personalized menus, disabling, 364 Phone Book Bitmap, 280 Phone-book entry, 270, 276 Phone-book file field, 281 Phone number entries, 269 Physical device, 156 Physical directory, 186, 187 name. 187 Physical interface, 158 Physical location, 184, 296, 414 Physical name, 184 Physical network, 105 Planned applications, 9 Planning Worksheet, 264, 289 Plug and Play capabilities, 30 compatibility, 227 compliant printer, 156, 166 detection, 157 device, adding, 223-228 hardware, 225, 226 printer, 158 specification, 228 support, 222, 232 technology, 30 Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP), 137, 141, 144, 251 logging, enabling, 142 Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP), 78 Pointer speed, 377 POP3. See Post Office Protocol. Port. See TCP port. addresses, 227 number, 172 settings, 178 Post-connect actions, 273 Post-connection programs, 276

Post Office Protocol, version 3 (POP3), 76, 247 mail servers, 256 Power management options, 331 PPP. See Point-to-Point Protocol. PPTP. See Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol. Pre-connect actions. 273 Pre-Windows 2000 servers, compatible permissions, 50 Primary Domain Controller (PDC), 5 Print device. 156 servers. 99 sharing, 87 Print-enabled application, 386 Print Server link, 39 Printers, 156, 161. See also Default printer; Network; Plug and Play. sharing, 159 Private network, 33 connection, 62 Internet usage, 78–81 dialing up, 64-67 Privileges, 327 Product Identification page, 424 Product update information, 420 Protocols, 63 Proxy server, 74 Public domain name, 31, 34

R

RADIUS. See Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service.
RAID, 8
RAS. See Remote Access Service.
Ready applications, 9
Realm names, 269
Recipient and Dialing Information page, 389, 391 selection, 392
Recovery, 395 logging, 318
Redundancy, 42
Referral service telephone number, 69
Register Now link, 39
Registration wizard, 420 Registry (Reg), 208, 398 backup, 416 information. 420 updates, 204, 212 Remote access, 130, 144 configuration/enabling, 128 server, 130, 133, 137 Remote Access Service (RAS). 264 client. 64 Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS), 128 accounting, 140 authentication, 139 client, 134 server, 133, 138, 143 Server address, 129 shared secret password, 129 Remote clients, 132 Remote networks, connection, 288 Remote SMTP domain, 189 Remote storage, 318 Removable storage, 401 restoring, 414 Replication. See Files; Information; Multimaster replication; Single-master replication. engine, 117 performing, 54 **Request For Comment (RFC)** 1034, 114 1035, 114 2052, 114 2136, 114, 124 2137, 114 2138, 128 2139, 128 Request For Comment (RFC) 2131, 95 Resource kit support tools adding, 209-218 reinstalling, 214-218 removal, 214-218 Resource load, 196 Resource records, 124 types, 123 Restore wizard, 397, 417 completion, 412 steps, 409-416

Reverse lookup zones, 116. See also Secondary reverse lookup zone. creation, 115 identification, 120 name, 120 RFC. See Request For Comment. Root directory, 5, 179, 185, 187. See also File Transfer Protocol. Root domain. See Forests. Routers, 99, 102, 137, See also Demanddial routers; Windows 2000. Routing, 144. See also Demand dial routing; Local Area Network. disabling, 130 protocols, 129 types, 137 Routing and Remote Access configuration steps, 136–143 manager, usage, 136 setup, 134 snap-in, 143 **Routing and Remote Access Configuration** wizard. 127. 129-136 **Routing and Remote Access Server** (RRAS), 129 manager, 144 server. 140 **Routing and Remote Access Server** (RRAS) Setup wizard, 129, 130 **Routing and Remote Access Server** (RRAS) wizard information requirements, 129 preparation, 128-129 purpose, 129 **Routing and Remote Access Service** (RRAS), 89 **RRAS.** See Routing and Remote Access Server; Routing and Remote Access Service. Run scripts, 180

S

Scalability, increase, 10 Scheduled synchronization, name, 338 Scheduled Synchronization Wizard information, 323 preparation, 322–323 purpose, 322–323 steps, 335–340 Scheduled task stopping, 406 verification. 331 Scheduled Task Wizard completion, 328 information, 323 preparation, 322-323 purpose, 322-323 steps, 323-332 Scheduling Transmission page, 392, 393 Scope, 95, 112. See also Multicast scope. activation. 111 creation. 94 selection. 105 wizards. 94 Screen. See Computers. resolution, 364 Script Debugger, 194 SCSI. 8 adapter, 233 Secondary reverse lookup zone, 120 Secure dynamic updates, 116 Secure Password Authentication (SPA), 258 Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), 178, 179, 191 Security, 137, 152, 340. See also Filelevel security; NTFS file system. files, restoring, 413 group functionality, 5 implications, 293 principals, 54 requirements, 170 software, initialization. See Third-party security software. Self-extracting executable file, 287 Send Cover Page Fax, 394 Send Fax wizard, 385 completion, 393 information, 386 preparation, 386 purpose, 386 steps, 386-394 Senior Business Decision-maker, 424 Senior IT Decision-maker, 423

Serial Line Internet Protocol (SLIP), 251. See also Compressed Serial Line Internet Protocol. usage. 246 Serial port, 89 Server IP addresses, 170 management. See Dynamic Host **Control Protocol.** name field, 102 program configuration overview, 37-38 running, 50 type, 77, 251 Server Extensions Administrator, 354 Server Setup wizard, 23-26 Server wizard configuration, 29, 31-37 information requirements, 31 preparation, 30-31 purpose, 30-31 Services. 63 profiles, 264, 265, 270, 271, 275, 283. See also Connections. file, 285 package, 286 removal, 267 Setup wizard, 19. See also Server Setup wizard. information requirements, 20-21 preparation, 20-21 purpose, 20 Share description, 147 name, 147, 296 permissions, customization, 148 security, 148 Shared network printer, 167 Shared secret password, entering, 134 Shared system volume, 48 Shortcuts, 344, 345 verification. 348 ShowSounds page, 371 Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) protocol, 170 server, 77, 170, 183 services. 188

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) Virtual Server, 184, 188-191 wizard, 182, 183. See also New SMTP Virtual Server wizard. Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), 201 subcomponents, 202 Single-master replication, 50 Single-server failure, 292 SLIP. See Serial Line Internet Protocol. Smart card. See X.25. SMTP. See Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. SNMP. See Simple Network Management Protocol. SOA. See Start Of Authority. Software. See Drivers. compatibility. See Windows 2000. compression, 142 driver, 236 vendor, 420 SoundSentry page, 371 SPA. See Secure Password Authentication. Sparse files, 10 SSL. See Secure Sockets Layer. Stand-alone server, 30, 42, 54, 59 system return, 57 Standalone Dfs root, 292, 293 creation. 294 Standard primary type, 116, 125 Standard secondary type, 116, 125 Start date. 326. 338 Start IP address, 94, 96, 108, 109 inserting, 133 Start Of Authority (SOA), 122 Start time, 325, 326, 329, 338 Static address. 99, 252 Static address pool, 141 Static IP address, 15, 33, 95, 99, 112 Status-Area-Icon, 282 StickyKeys, 371, 381 Storage controllers, 8 Storage device, 414 Subcomponents, 196, 198 Subdirectories, 174 Subnet mask. 15. 94. See also Client: Default subnet mask.

field. 96 Subnets, 105. See also Logical subnets. Subnetting, 98 Summary page, 51, 57 Superscope, 111, 112 creation, 94, 105 Synchronization task, 338 Sysdiff tool, 212 System browsing, 352 failure, 292 files, restoring, 413 information. 427 maintenance wizards, 322 management, 396 services, 204 startup files, 398 System Administrator, 219, 249 System Inventory page, 424 System Log, 142 System maintenance wizards, 321 System volume (Sysvol). See Shared system volume. folder, 398 storage, location, 43 Systemroot, 142 Sysvol. See System volume.

Т

Task completion options, 331 Task options, repetition, 329 Task Scheduler, 404, 406, 417 Taskpad Display page, 356 Taskpad Target, 357 Taskpad views, 357 creation. 344 TCP/IP, 13 address assignment, configuration, 86 specification, 86 configuration, 15, 33 connected printer, 158 installation, 25 name resolution. 31 network. 14 properties page, 84

stack, 173 usage, 128, 132 TCP port, 172 field, 173, 178 Telephone number, 62, 64, 281, 388, 423. See also Dial-up telephone number; Internet Service Provider; Referral service telephone number. **Terminal Services**, 194 Test page, 167 Text file, 286 Third-party driver, 159 Third-party security software, initialization, 275 Third-party software, 8 Throughput, maximization. See Data. Time-Remaining packets, 142 Time To Live (TTL), 108 Timeframe, 325, 329 Title-bar, 282 ToggleKeys, 381 page, 375 ToolTips, 375 Tree. See Namespace tree. creation. See Domain tree. item, 344, 356, 360 structure. See Hierarchical tree structure. Trusting domains, 294 TTL. See Time To Live.

U

Unallocated space, 315 UNC name, 147, 164 Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) devices, 20 disconnection, 16, 17 UPS. See Uninterruptible Power Supply. User account, 24 configuration, 136 name, 62 User-level permissions, 174, 175 User-provided information, 244 User-provided login name, 269 Username, 44-46, 251. See also Internet Service Provider; Mail account. entering, 73 field, 259

graying out, 83 Users domain, 45, 46 full control, 148 information, 387 permissions, 175, 187 restriction, 147 selection, 150 support information, 267 vision/hearing/mobility problems, 362

V

VBScript code, 180 Verification, 403. See also Data; Scheduled task: Shortcuts. Vertical list, 356, 360 Virtual directory, 187 alias. 185 creation, 188 Virtual Directory Creation wizard, 184-188 Virtual private connections, allowing, 83 Virtual Private Network (VPN), 62, 80, 270 connection, 138, 264, 271-273 creation, 82 support, 137 destination, 91 link. 273 password, 272 support, 78 tunnel, 275 username, 272 Virtual server, 188, 189. See also Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Virtual Server. Virtual SMTP domain, 191 server, 189 Visual InterDev RAD Remote Deployment Support, 198 Volume, 43 label. 318 VPN. See Virtual Private Network.

W

Web/Media Server link, 39 Web Site Access Permissions. See World Wide Web. Web Site Content Directory. See World Wide Web. Web Site Creation wizard. See World Wide Web. WebView, enabling, 351 Wide Area Network (WAN) adapter, 128 environments, 143 Windows 2000 components, 195 configuration, 27 directory service, 31 hardware requirements, 7-8 hardware/software compatibility, 8-9 initial installation process, 21-23 preinstallation, 3-16 router. 129 servers. 182 compatible permissions, 51 software. 219 subcomponent, 195 support, 103 system, 312 upgrading/installation, choice, 6-7 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Setup wizard. 207 information requirements, 208 preparation, 208 purpose, 208 steps, 209-218 Windows 2000 Resource Kit Support Tools Setup Wizard, 212, 214 Windows 2000 Server, 7, 94, 300 Windows accounting, 140 Windows API, 208 Windows Components wizard, 193, 204 information requirements, 196 preparation, 194–196 purpose, 195 Windows Explorer, 336, 341 Windows Internet Name Service (WINS), 15 Server address. 94

servers, 95, 100, 103, 112, 270 Windows Update site, 426 WINS. See Windows Internet Name Service. Wizards. See Create A New Zone wizard; Create Multicast Scope wizard; Create Scope wizard; Create Superscope wizard. addition, 146 configuration. See Server wizard. post-installation behavior, 215 usage. See Active Directory installation wizard; Network Connection wizard. Workstations, 87, 204, 362 World Wide Web (WWW / Web), 184-188, 247 browser, 74, 279 Developer, 424 page. See External web page. servers, 322 sites, 173, 178, 179, 185, 188, 292 permissions, 180 Web-based e-mail, 76 Web Site Access Permissions, 180 Web Site Content Directory, 185 Web Site Creation wizard, 176-181

Х

X.25 smart card, 128 usage, 66

Ζ

Zone Type page, 116 Zones. See Active Directory-integrated zone. creation. See Domain Name System. file, 122 name, 118

The Global Knowledge Advantage

Global Knowledge has a global delivery system for its products and services. The company has 28 subsidiaries, and offers its programs through a total of 60+ locations. No other vendor can provide consistent services across a geographic area this large. Global Knowledge is the largest independent information technology education provider, offering programs on a variety of platforms. This enables our multi-platform and multi-national customers to obtain all of their programs from a single vendor. The company has developed the unique CompetusTM Framework software tool and methodology which can quickly reconfigure courseware to the proficiency level of a student on an interactive basis. Combined with self-paced and on-line programs, this technology can reduce the time required for training by prescribing content in only the deficient skills areas. The company has fully automated every aspect of the education process, from registration and follow-up, to "just-in-time" production of courseware. Global Knowledge through its Enterprise Services Consultancy, can customize programs and products to suit the needs of an individual customer.

Global Knowledge Classroom Education Programs

The backbone of our delivery options is classroom-based education. Our modern, well-equipped facilities staffed with the finest instructors offer programs in a wide variety of information technology topics, many of which lead to professional certifications.

Custom Learning Solutions

This delivery option has been created for companies and governments that value customized learning solutions. For them, our consultancy-based approach of developing targeted education solutions is most effective at helping them meet specific objectives.

Self-Paced and Multimedia Products

This delivery option offers self-paced program titles in interactive CD-ROM, videotape and audio tape programs. In addition, we offer custom development of interactive multimedia courseware to customers and partners. Call us at 1-888-427-4228.

Electronic Delivery of Training

Our network-based training service delivers efficient competency-based, interactive training via the World Wide Web and organizational intranets. This leading-edge delivery option provides a custom learning path and "just-in-time" training for maximum convenience to students.

Global Knowledge Courses Available

Microsoft

- Windows 2000 Deployment Strategies
- Introduction to Directory Services
- Windows 2000 Client Administration
- Windows 2000 Server
- Windows 2000 Update
- MCSE Bootcamp
- Microsoft Networking Essentials
- Windows NT 4.0 Workstation
- Windows NT 4.0 Server
- Windows NT Troubleshooting
- Windows NT 4.0 Security
- Windows 2000 Security
- Introduction to Microsoft Web Tools

Management Skills

- Project Management for IT Professionals
- Microsoft Project Workshop
- Management Skills for IT Professionals

Network Fundamentals

- Understanding Computer Networks
- Telecommunications Fundamentals I
- Telecommunications Fundamentals II
- Understanding Networking Fundamentals
- Upgrading and Repairing PCs
- DOS/Windows A+ Preparation
- Network Cabling Systems

WAN Networking and Telephony

- Building Broadband Networks
- Frame Relay Internetworking
- Converging Voice and Data Networks
- Introduction to Voice Over IP
- Understanding Digital Subscriber Line (xDSL)

Internetworking

- ATM Essentials
- ATM Internetworking
- ATM Troubleshooting
- Understanding Networking Protocols
- Internetworking Routers and Switches
- Network Troubleshooting
- Internetworking with TCP/IP
- Troubleshooting TCP/IP Networks
- Network Management
- Network Security Administration
- Virtual Private Networks
- Storage Area Networks
- Cisco OSPF Design and Configuration
- Cisco Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) Configuration

Web Site Management and Development

- Advanced Web Site Design
- Introduction to XML
- Building a Web Site
- Introduction to JavaScript
- Web Development Fundamentals
- Introduction to Web Databases

PERL, UNIX, and Linux

- PERL Scripting
- PERL with CGI for the Web
- UNIX Level I
- UNIX Level II
- Introduction to Linux for New Users
- Linux Installation, Configuration, and Maintenance

Authorized Vendor Training

Red Hat

- Introduction to Red Hat Linux
- Red Hat Linux Systems Administration
- Red Hat Linux Network and Security Administration
- RHCE Rapid Track Certification

Cisco Systems

- Interconnecting Cisco Network Devices
- Advanced Cisco Router Configuration
- Installation and Maintenance of Cisco Routers
- Cisco Internetwork Troubleshooting
- Designing Cisco Networks
- Cisco Internetwork Design
- Configuring Cisco Catalyst Switches
- Cisco Campus ATM Solutions
- Cisco Voice Over Frame Relay, ATM, and IP
- Configuring for Selsius IP Phones
- Building Cisco Remote Access Networks
- Managing Cisco Network Security
- Cisco Enterprise Management Solutions

Nortel Networks

- Nortel Networks Accelerated Router Configuration
- Nortel Networks Advanced IP Routing
- Nortel Networks WAN Protocols
- Nortel Networks Frame Switching
- Nortel Networks Accelar 1000
- Comprehensive Configuration
- Nortel Networks Centillion Switching
- Network Management with Optivity for Windows

Oracle Training

- Introduction to Oracle8 and PL/SQL
- Oracle8 Database Administration

Custom Corporate Network Training

Train on Cutting Edge Technology

We can bring the best in skill-based training to your facility to create a real-world hands-on training experience. Global Knowledge has invested millions of dollars in network hardware and software to train our students on the same equipment they will work with on the job. Our relationships with vendors allow us to incorporate the latest equipment and platforms into your on-site labs.

Maximize Your Training Budget

Global Knowledge provides experienced instructors, comprehensive course materials, and all the networking equipment needed to deliver high quality training. You provide the students; we provide the knowledge.

Avoid Travel Expenses

On-site courses allow you to schedule technical training at your convenience, saving time, expense, and the opportunity cost of travel away from the workplace.

Discuss Confidential Topics

Private on-site training permits the open discussion of sensitive issues such as security, access, and network design. We can work with your existing network's proprietary files while demonstrating the latest technologies.

Customize Course Content

Global Knowledge can tailor your courses to include the technologies and the topics which have the greatest impact on your business. We can complement your internal training efforts or provide a total solution to your training needs.

Corporate Pass

The Corporate Pass Discount Program rewards our best network training customers with preferred pricing on public courses, discounts on multimedia training packages, and an array of career planning services.

Global Knowledge Training Lifecycle

Supporting the Dynamic and Specialized Training Requirements of Information Technology Professionals

- Define Profile
- Assess Skills
- Design Training
- Deliver Training
- Test Knowledge
- Update Profile
- Use New Skills

Global Knowledge

Global Knowledge programs are developed and presented by industry professionals with "real-world" experience. Designed to help professionals meet today's interconnectivity and interoperability challenges, most of our programs feature hands-on labs that incorporate state-of-the-art communication components and equipment.

ON-SITE TEAM TRAINING

Bring Global Knowledge's powerful training programs to your company. At Global Knowledge, we will custom design courses to meet your specific network requirements. Call (919)-461-8686 for more information.

YOUR GUARANTEE

Global Knowledge believes its courses offer the best possible training in this field. If during the first day you are not satisfied and wish to withdraw from the course, simply notify the instructor, return all course materials and receive a 100% refund.

REGISTRATION INFORMATION

In the US: call: (888) 762–4442 fax: (919) 469–7070 visit our website: www.globalknowledge.com

Get More at access.globalknowledge

The premier online information source for IT professionals

You've gained access to a Global Knowledge information portal designed to inform, educate and update visitors on issues regarding IT and IT education.

Get what you want when you want it at the <u>access.globalknowledge</u> site:

Choose personalized technology articles related to *your* interests. Access a new article, review, or tutorial regularly throughout the week customized to what you want to see.

Keep learning in between Global courses by taking advantage of chat sessions with other users or instructors. Get the tips, tricks and advice that you need today!

Make your point in the Access.Globalknowledge community with threaded discussion groups related to technologies and certification.

Get instant course information at your fingertips. Customized course calendars showing you the courses you want when and where you want them.

Get the resources you need with online tools, trivia, skills assessment and more!

All this and more is available now on the web at access.globalknowledge. VISIT TODAY!



http://access.globalknowledge.com

SYNGRESS SOLUTIONS....



AVAILABLE Order now at

MANAGING ACTIVE DIRECTORY FOR WINDOWS 2000 SERVER

Windows 2000's Active Directory provides a single uniform interface to all of the network's resources, including printers, documents, e-mail addresses, databases, and users. It also manages naming, querying, registration, and resolution needs. This book covers everything a system administrator needs to know about Active Directory.

CONFIGURING **WINDOWS 2000** SERVER SECURITY

Microsoft has incorporated dramatic new security changes in Windows 2000 Server, including Kerberos Server Authentication, Public Key Infrastructure (PKI), IP Security (IPSec), Encrypting File System (EFS), and Active Directory permissions. This book is an indispensable guide for anyone bearing the responsibility for the overall security of a Windows 2000 Server network. ISBN: 1-928994-02-4

\$49.95

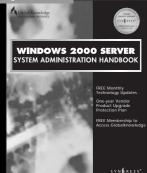


ISBN: 1-928994-07-5 \$49.95

AVAILABLE



AVAILABLE Order now at



WINDOWS 2000 SERVER SYSTEM **ADMINISTRATION** HANDBOOK

As an NT System Administrator, you must quickly master Windows 2000 Server's new administration tools Don't be left behind on Microsoft Management Console (MMC), Active Directory, IP routing, Kerberos security, and the many other new features of Windows 2000 Server. This is the one book you'll need to quickly become proficient in configuring and running a Windows 2000 network. ISBN: 1-928994-09-1 \$49.95

IP ADDRESSING AND SUBNETTING **INCLUDING IPv6**

Internet Protocol (IP) is the chosen protocol for the revolutionary convergence of telephony and data. The impact of a poorly designed addressing architecture on an enterprise wide network can be catastrophic. This book provides you with complete coverage of the latest strategies, configuration scenarios, tips, techniques and warnings to successfully deploy an IP Addressing and Subnetting scheme on your network. ISBN: 1-928994-01-6 \$59.95

solutions@syngress.com SYNGRESS[®]